



THREE GREAT PLAYS OF
Shakespeare



Three Great Plays of Shakespeare

Level 4

Retold by Karen Holmes

Series Editors: Andy Hopkins and Jocelyn Potter

Contents

	page
Introduction	v
Romeo and Juliet	1
Macbeth	24
King Lear	37
Activities	63

Introduction

'And so,' the prince said, 'this dark and cloudy morning has brought a sad peace. There will never be a sadder story than the story of Romeo and Juliet.'

Romeo and Juliet tells the story of two important families in Verona, in Italy. The families hate each other. Romeo, the son of Lord Montague, falls in love with Juliet, the daughter of Lord Capulet. But when people hate each other, everybody around them is affected. The story does not end happily because Romeo and Juliet cannot escape from the war between their families and live happily together. In this play, hate has more power over people's lives than love.

All three stories in this book have sad endings. In each story, the main characters die. They die because they, or others, are weak, greedy or very foolish.

Lord and Lady Macbeth (*Macbeth*) are greedy, and as a result a lot of people die. Macbeth is also weak. Lady Macbeth says, 'Macbeth is too kind, too gentle. There are things that he must do but he is afraid to do them. I must speak to him, and make him brave.' He becomes a murderer and a cruel king because his wife tells him that he must perform evil acts. By the end of the play, Macbeth does not care about anybody. When his wife dies, he says, 'It would be better if she died at another time.'

In the third story, *King Lear*, the king is an a very old man. His great age makes him weak and foolish. He does not understand the characters of his three daughters, and he believes Goneril and Regan when they say that they love him. He thinks that his youngest daughter, Cordelia, does not love him because she refuses to use such fine words. But Goneril and Regan are greedy for power and they do not care about their father.

Many of the characters in these stories have a lot of faults but, like real people, they have good qualities and moments of greatness too. Macbeth is a fine army commander. He wins an important war and King Duncan admires him. Lear is a great king. The King of France thinks that he is a good man, and the Earl of Gloucester loves him. Even the Montagues and the Capulets end their quarrel — but too late.

William Shakespeare is the most famous writer of plays in the English language. He was born in Stratford-upon-Avon in 1564, six years after Elizabeth I became Queen of England. He wrote thirty-nine plays; thirty-four of these are still regularly seen on the stage. Many are famous as films too. He also wrote hundreds of poems.

We do not know very much about William Shakespeare's life. We think that he went to school in Stratford. He married Anne Hathaway in 1582, and they had three children: Suzanna (born in 1583), Hamnet and Judith (born together in 1585).

After that, we know nothing about his life until 1592. He went to London, where he began to write successful plays. He became an important member of a theatre company, which performed at two London theatres: the Globe and the Blackfriars. His plays were given special performances at the courts of Queen Elizabeth I and King James I. Shakespeare's success made him a wealthy man, and in 1597 he bought New Place, the largest house in Stratford. We believe that he left London and went back to live at New Place in 1610. He continued to write plays until he died in Stratford in 1616.

We know more about Shakespeare's plays than we know about the writer. For 400 years, people have studied every word that Shakespeare wrote. He wrote amusing plays with happy endings, like *A Midsummer Night's Dream* and *Twelfth Night*. He also wrote

historical plays; nine of these are about English kings. The third type were sad and serious plays, like the three stories in this book.

Romeo and Juliet

This is the story of the love of Romeo and Juliet. Romeo was the son of Lord Montague, the head of the Montague family. Juliet was the daughter of Lord Capulet.

The Montagues and the Capulets were two important families in the city of Verona who had had a terrible quarrel. Even their servants hated each other, and they fought and cursed each other whenever they met.

One day, two servants from the house of Capulet saw two servants from the house of Montague and they began to fight. Benvolio, a friend of Romeo, saw the fight. He asked for peace and quiet, so he hated to see people fighting.

'Stop!' he cried, but it was already too late. Tybalt, a young and angry Capulet, had arrived in the street.

'Help me to stop this fight,' Benvolio cried to him.

Tybalt pulled out his sword. 'I hate all Montagues and I hate you!' he cried, and he began to fight Benvolio.

The noise and the shouting brought officers of the law to the scene of the fight. Then Lord Capulet and his wife arrived, and Lord Montague and his wife. The heads of the two families pulled out their swords.

Suddenly Prince Escalus, the Prince of Verona, appeared.

'You men, you are like wild animals!' he said to them angrily. 'Your quarrels spoil the quiet of our streets. Listen to me! If you make trouble in the streets of Verona again, you will pay for it with your lives! Now, everyone must leave this place.'

Lord and Lady Montague and Benvolio left last.

'Where is Romeo?' asked Lady Montague. 'I am very glad that he did not take part in this fight.'

'Very early this morning,' Benvolio said, 'I could not sleep. I

walked out into the woods on the west of the city, and I saw Romeo there, alone. I went towards him, but when he saw me, he hid among the trees. I decided not to follow him.'

Romeo's father, Lord Montague, said, 'Many people have seen Romeo early in the morning, weeping alone. When the sun comes up, he goes into his room and he shuts out the daylight. I am afraid for him.'

'Do you know why he is unhappy?' Benvolio asked.

'He will not tell me,' Lord Montague replied.

'Look! Here he comes,' said Benvolio. 'Go home. I will try to find out why he is unhappy.'

He quickly learned the reason for Romeo's sadness.

'I love the beautiful Rosaline, but she does not love me,' Romeo said.

Benvolio tried to help his good friend. 'Forget her. Don't think about her,' he said.

'How can I forget her?' Romeo asked.

'Look around you. Look at other beautiful women.'

'When I look at other women, I see that Rosaline is the most beautiful of all!'

In another street in Verona, Count Paris was talking to Lord Capulet, Juliet's father. Paris was the prince's nephew.

'I would like to marry Juliet. What do you say?' Paris asked.

'She is my only child and she is too young,' said Capulet. 'Let two more summers pass before she marries. But you can speak to her and try to win her love. Every year at this time I give a great feast. It will take place tonight. All my friends will come to my house and dance. You must come too — then you can talk to Juliet.'

Capulet called a servant and said, 'On this piece of paper there is a list of names. Find these people and ask them to come to dinner at my house tonight.' Then he walked away with Paris.

'This is going to be quite difficult for me because I cannot read,' the servant thought.

Benvolio and Romeo came along the street. They were still talking about Romeo's unhappiness.

'Please, sir, can you read?' Capulet's servant asked. He gave Romeo the list of names.

Romeo read out the list for him: 'Martino and his wife and daughters; Anselm and his beautiful sisters; Mercutio and his brother Valentine; Lucio and Helena; Rosaline ... Where are these people going to meet?'

'At my master's house tonight,' the servant said.

'Who is your master?' Romeo asked.

'My master is the great and rich Lord Capulet. If you are not a Montague, come and drink wine with us all.'

'This is the chance I wanted for you!' said Benvolio happily. 'Go there. Compare your Rosaline with other women. You will see that she is not more beautiful than them.'

'You are wrong,' Romeo replied. 'Since the world began, the sun has never seen a woman as beautiful as Rosaline. I will go to the Capulet's feast — but only to look at Rosaline.'

•

Juliet was with her mother, Lady Capulet, and her nurse.

'You were a pretty little baby when I came here,' said the nurse. 'Now I have one wish. I want to live long enough to see you married!'

'I want to talk to you about marriage,' Lady Capulet said to her daughter. 'Juliet, do you want to find a husband?'

'I have not thought about it very much,' answered Juliet.

'Here in Verona, younger girls are already important ladies and mothers. I will tell you now that Count Paris hopes to win your love.'

'He is a fine man, almost a perfect man!' cried the nurse.' He is the finest man in Verona!'

'You will see him tonight at our feast,' Lady Capulet said.' He needs a wife, and you will make his life complete.'

•

The evening came. Romeo and his friends, Mercutio and Benvolio, put on hats to hide their faces and went to the feast at the Capulets' house.

But Tybalt heard Romeo's voice.

'I know that voice!' he said.' That man is a Montague. What is he doing here ?' He called to his servant,' Fetch my sword!'

'What is the matter?' asked Lord Capulet.

'That man is a Montague. He is our enemy!'

'Is it young Romeo ?'

'Yes,' Tybalt said.

'Let him stay. The people of Verona say that he is a good young man, and he is behaving like a gentleman tonight. Don't look so angry. We must entertain our guests.'

Tybalt was very angry but he had to obey his uncle.

At that moment, something wonderful happened to Romeo; he saw a beautiful girl. She was lovely, sweet, happy and good. As he watched her, he forgot about Rosaline. Now he was truly, deeply in love.

'He went to her and touched her hand.' Your hand is too soft for my rough touch,' he said.' But my lips are ready to touch your gentle hand with a kiss.' He kissed her hand.' You have lips, too,' he said.

Juliet found that she was in love with him, and so they kissed.

The nurse came to them.' Your mother wants to speak to you,' she said to Juliet.

'Who is her mother?' asked Romeo.

'Her mother is Lady Capulet,' the nurse replied.

'Oh, no!' Romeo thought. 'I have fallen in love with the daughter of my enemy!'

Everyone began to leave, and Romeo went with them. Juliet watched him go.

'Come here, nurse,' she said. 'Who is that gentleman over there ? Go and ask his name.'

The nurse came back and said,' His name is Romeo. He is a Montague, the only son of your great enemy.'

•

Later that same night, Romeo's friends searched the streets of Verona for him.

Romeo was standing below Juliet's lighted window when he saw her there.

'It is Juliet!' he said quietly. 'Oh! It is my love! She is as beautiful as the sun in the sky. She is looking up at the stars, but her eyes are brighter than they are. The birds will see them and think that it is already daytime.'

Juliet looked out of her window and rested her face on her hand. She was thinking of Romeo. She did not know that he was there, listening.

'Oh, Romeo, Romeo, why is your name Romeo?' she said. 'Leave your family and change your name. If you cannot, I will leave the Capulets. It is only your name that is my enemy. But what is important about a name ? If a rose had another name, it would still smell sweet. Change your name so we can be together.'

'Call me "Love",' Romeo called up to her.' That will be my name. I will never be Romeo again. I hate my name because it is your enemy.'

'How did you get there ?' Juliet asked.' The walls are high.'

'Stone walls cannot keep out love,' Romeo said.

Juliet was afraid.' If my family see you here, they will kill you,' she said.



'Stone walls cannot keep out love,' Romeo said.

'If their hatred ends my life,' said Romeo, 'then I will die. I do not care. I do not want to live without your love.'

'Do you love me? I know that you will say "yes". But tell me the truth.'

'Lady, I promise by the moon that touches the tops of those fruit trees with silver.'

'Oh! Don't promise by the moon,' Juliet said. 'The moon changes every month. I do not want your love to change like the moon.'

'What shall I promise by?' Romeo asked.

'Do not promise. You make me happy, but this love has come very suddenly. I must go now.'

'No! Wait!' Romeo cried.

At that moment the nurse called.

'I can hear a noise,' said Juliet. 'Sweet Romeo, stay here for a moment. I will come back.'

She went inside, but soon she returned.

'Dear Romeo,' she said, 'if you truly love me and wish to marry me, send a message tomorrow. I will send someone to collect your message. Tell me where and at what time you will marry me and my life will be yours. I will follow you, my lord, across the world.'

The nurse called again. Juliet went in and then came out again.

'Romeo!'

'My sweet?'

'At what time tomorrow shall I send someone to you?' she asked.

'At nine o'clock,' Romeo replied.

'My messenger will find you. It is almost morning, so I must let you go. Good night! Good night! I am sad to leave you, but it is a sweet sadness. I will not stop saying "Good night" until tomorrow.'

She went back into her room.

'Let sleep rest on your eyes,' said Romeo,' and peace in your heart. I wish that I could rest in such a sweet place.' He turned away.' I must go to Friar Lawrence and tell him about Juliet,' he said to himself.' He will help me.'

•

Friar Lawrence was a man of God. Romeo and Juliet both knew him. Early the next morning, he was picking plants outside his cell. He knew a lot about plants. He used them to make sick people better, or to help tired or ill people sleep.

When he saw Romeo running towards him, Friar Lawrence was very surprised.

'Why are you here so early?' asked the friar. 'Young men sleep late in the morning. Can't you sleep? Were you thinking of Rosaline?'

'No, I could not sleep, but I was not thinking about Rosaline. I have forgotten her name and all the unhappiness that went with it. I must tell you what happened. Last night I went to a feast at my enemy's house. There I fell in love with the beautiful daughter of Lord Capulet, and she loves me. We want you to marry us today.'

'Oh! What a change!' cried Friar Lawrence. 'Yesterday you loved Rosaline! Now you tell me that you love someone else. I do not like it. It is too sudden.'

'Don't be angry with me. Juliet loves me, and Rosaline does not. Please marry us today.'

'Rosaline knew that you were not really in love,' said the wise friar. 'So I will marry you. This marriage may turn the hatred between your two families into love.'

•

Mercutio and Benvolio were searching for Romeo. Mercutio was; a member of Prince Escalus's family, and one of Romeo's friends.

'Romeo was not at his father's house last night,' Benvolio said. 'Tybalt is looking for him. He is angry because Romeo went to the Capulets' feast, and he wants to fight him!'

Then Romeo arrived. He looked very happy.

'What has happened to you?' Mercutio asked him.

Before Romeo could answer, the nurse and her servant arrived.

'Go to my father's house,' Romeo said to Benvolio and Mercutio.

'I will follow you soon.'

He waited until they had gone, then he spoke to the nurse.

'Tell Juliet,' said Romeo, 'to go to Friar Lawrence this afternoon. He will marry us in his cell. My man, Balthazar, will meet you in one hour behind the church. He will bring you a ladder. Tonight I will climb up to Juliet's room.'

'Will Balthazar keep your secret?'

'Yes,' Romeo replied.' He is a good servant.'

'Paris wants to marry my lady Juliet, but I know that you will make her happy,' the nurse said.

'Goodbye,' Romeo said.' Give my dearest love to Juliet.'

'I will, a thousand times,' she promised.

Juliet was waiting for the nurse to return.

'Oh! Here she comes! Dearest nurse, are you bringing me news? Have you met him? What does he say about our marriage?'

'Can you visit Friar Lawrence today?'

'Yes,' Juliet said.

'Then go to his cell. Romeo is waiting there to make you his wife. Ah, that has brought the blood to your face! Now I must go and fetch a ladder. Your Romeo will climb up into your room tonight.'

'Dear, good nurse!' Juliet said.

•

That same afternoon, the friar married Romeo and Juliet.

'Heaven smiles upon this wedding,' Friar Lawrence said to

them. 'I hope that there will not be trouble later.'

'I do not care,' Romeo cried.

'Great and sudden love can bring great sadness,' the friar replied.

•

A little later on the same day, Benvolio and Mercutio were talking together.

'Mercutio,' said Benvolio, 'let us go away. The Capulets are somewhere in these streets and I do not want to meet them. They will want to fight.'

He was right. Suddenly Tybalt and his friends came into the street. Tybalt and Mercutio started to quarrel. Then Romeo came along the street and Tybalt began to shout at him.

'You are my enemy!' Tybalt cried. 'Pull out your sword!'

'I do not want to be your enemy,' Romeo replied. 'I love the Capulet name as much as I love my own name.'

But Tybalt wanted to fight. 'Pull out your sword!' he shouted again to Romeo.

'I will not quarrel with you,' Romeo said.

Mercutio was surprised. He did not want Romeo to be friendly with Tybalt. 'I will fight you instead,' he shouted to Tybalt, and a fight began.

'Stop, gentlemen,' Romeo cried. 'The prince told us not to fight in these streets.'

He tried to stand between them, but Tybalt's sword went under Romeo's arm and wounded Mercutio. Tybalt ran away.

'I am wounded!' cried Mercutio. 'A curse on both your families! Fetch a doctor!'

'Be brave, man!' said Romeo. 'I hope it is not a bad wound.'

'It is not very deep, but it is bad enough. Look for me tomorrow, and you will have to find my tomb. Why did you stand between us? Tybalt's sword passed under your arm. Help me into a house, Benvolio.'



'I will fight you instead,' he shouted to Tybalt.

Soon afterwards, Benvolio returned. 'Oh, Romeo,' he said, 'brave Mercutio is dead.'

Everything seemed black for Romeo. His dear friend was dead and Tybalt hated him more than ever. The prince would punish them for quarrelling in the streets of Verona and for Mercutio's death.

Then Tybalt came back.

'Tybalt is alive, and my friend Mercutio is dead!' cried Romeo. 'Now I do not care what I do. One of us will die with Mercutio.'

There was a terrible fight between Romeo and Tybalt, and Tybalt fell dead.

'Escape, Romeo!' cried Benvolio. 'People are coming. The prince will be angry, and he will punish you with death.'

As the unhappy Romeo ran away, the prince, the Montagues and the Capulets arrived.

'Who started this quarrel?' asked the prince.

Lady Capulet stood weeping over the body of the dead Tybalt as Benvolio tried to explain.

'Romeo tried to stop the fight between Tybalt and Mercutio but he could not. Tybalt killed Mercutio, then Romeo killed Tybalt.'

Lady Capulet did not believe him. 'Benvolio belongs to the Montague family. He is lying. Romeo killed Tybalt and he must not live.'

'I will have to punish Romeo for Tybalt's death,' said the prince. 'He must leave the city and never return. If I find Romeo in Verona, he will die!'

•

Juliet was waiting for the night.

'Come, gende night!' she said. 'Bring me my Romeo and let me hold him in my arms. And when he dies, take him and cut him into little stars. He will make the face of heaven look very

fine. Everyone will love the night. Ah, here comes my nurse. Have you brought the ladder?'

The nurse came in carrying a ladder.

'Why are you weeping?' Juliet asked.

'Tybalt is dead,' she said. 'Romeo killed him!'

'No!' Juliet cried. 'Don't say such a terrible thing.'

'It is true. I saw the wound on Tybalt's body. Romeo killed him and now he must leave the city. Oh, Tybalt! Tybalt was an honest gentleman!'

'Tybalt wanted to kill my husband. Now my husband is alive, and Tybalt is dead, but Romeo must leave Verona. These words mean death to me. I cannot live without him.'

'Go to your room,' said the nurse. 'I will find Romeo for you. I know where he is. He is in Friar Lawrence's cell.'

'Oh, find him! Give him this ring. Tell him to come and say his last goodbye to me!'

•

At the same time, Friar Lawrence was trying to help Romeo.

'The Capulets want the prince to kill you,' the friar said. 'But he has only ordered you to leave Verona.'

'Never! Let me die instead,' Romeo cried.

'Stay calm. The world is great and wide.'

'There is no world for me except Verona. Juliet is here. Let me die if I cannot stay with her. Give me poison or a sharp knife. Let me die!'

'Don't say that. You are talking like a madman,' the friar said.

The nurse arrived. 'I have come from Lady Juliet,' she said. 'Where is Romeo?'

'He is here,' the friar replied. 'His tears are making him crazy.'

'Juliet is the same. She just weeps and weeps.'

'Tell me,' said Romeo. 'Does she think I am a murderer? Does she still love me?'

'She does not say anything. She calls out your name and then Tybalt's name,' the nurse said.

Romeo was very unhappy. He tried to drive his sharp dagger into his heart, but the friar stopped him.

'Stop! Are you a man?' Friar Lawrence asked. 'You cry like a woman. You behave wildly like an animal. I thought you were strong. If you kill yourself, you will kill your lady. She lives for you. Be strong, man! Go to Juliet and help her. Then, early tomorrow morning, you must leave Verona and go to Mantua. Stay there until the prince forgives you. Nurse, go to your lady. Tell her that Romeo is coming to her.'

'Yes,' said Romeo.

'Here, sir,' the nurse said. 'Juliet wants you to have this ring.'

'Go now,' the friar said to Romeo. 'Leave for Mantua tomorrow. I will send your servant there with messages for you.'

•

That night, Romeo climbed up the ladder into Juliet's room. It was a strange night for the new husband and wife. They were wonderfully happy, but very frightened.

At the first light of day, Romeo had to leave.

'Must you go now?' said Juliet. 'It is still night.'

'Look, love!' said Romeo. 'The light is shining through the clouds in the east, and the stars are pale now. Daylight is waiting on the mountain tops. I must go now and live — or stay and die.'

Juliet was frightened. 'Go now!' she said. 'Quickly! Go!'

The nurse came into the room. 'Your mother is coming!' she said.

'Goodbye, my love,' Romeo said. 'Give me one kiss and I will go.'

'I am afraid,' Juliet said to her nurse as he left. 'I dreamed I saw Romeo at the bottom of a tomb. Oh, please let him come back to me!'

Lady Capulet entered Juliet's room. She and her husband had decided that they wanted Juliet to marry Paris.

'Daughter, why are you still in bed?' she asked.

'I am not well,' Juliet replied.

'You are still weeping because of Tybalt's death,' her mother said. 'It is wrong that his murderer is still alive. I will tell a friend in Mantua about Tybalt's death, and he will kill Romeo.'

Juliet did not want her mother to know about her marriage to Romeo, so she said, 'I will never be happy until I see Romeo again and he is punished for the death of my cousin.'

'My child,' Lady Capulet said, 'Let us think of happier things. Early on Thursday morning, Count Paris will marry you at St Peter's Church.'

'He will not!' cried Juliet. 'Tell my father it is too soon. I will not marry yet.'

'Here comes your father. Tell him yourself.'

Lord Capulet came into the room. 'What is wrong?' he said. 'Are you still weeping? Has your mother told you about your wedding to Paris?'

'Yes, sir,' said Lady Capulet. 'I told her, but she will not obey.'

'I do not understand. She should thank us. We have found her a fine husband.'

'I cannot thank you for something that I will hate,' said Juliet.

Lord Capulet was very angry. 'On Thursday, you will go with Paris to St Peter's Church, or I will take you there by force.'

'Please, father-,' Juliet cried.

'Go to the church on Thursday, or I will never speak to you again. You will not come into my house. You can beg and die in the streets.'

He left the room.

'Is there no pity?' said Juliet. 'Oh, my sweet mother. I beg you to delay this marriage for a month, a week. If you do not, I will die like Tybalt.'

'That is enough. I will not help you,' Lady Capulet said, and she left the room.

'Nurse, what can I do?' Juliet cried. 'Help me!'

'Your mother is right,' the nurse said. 'You should marry Paris. He is a good man. You will be happy with him.'

'I will go to Friar Lawrence. Tell my mother that I am sorry my father is upset.' The nurse went out.

'If he cannot help me, I will end my life,' Juliet thought.

•

Paris was in Friar Lawrence's cell. 'I want to arrange my marriage to Juliet,' he said.

'On Thursday, sir?' said the friar. 'That is very soon.'

'Capulet wants us to marry quickly, and that is my wish too. Juliet weeps too much because of Tybalt's death. Her wedding will stop her tears.'

'I must delay this wedding,' thought the friar. 'It should never take place at all.'

Then he said to Paris, 'Look, sir, here she comes!'

'My lady and my wife,' said Paris.

'I am not your wife yet,' said Juliet.

'I will make you my wife on Thursday. Until then, goodbye.' He went out and left Juliet alone with the friar.

'Oh, shut the door,' she cried, 'and then come and weep with me. Nobody can help me! Nobody can offer me hope! If you cannot think of a plan to help me, I want to die.'

'Wait, daughter,' the friar said. 'I think I can help. You say that you will kill yourself if you have to marry Paris. Then perhaps you can pretend to be dead for a short time.'

'I will do anything if I can stay true to my dear love, Romeo.'

'Go home. Tell your mother and father that you will marry Paris. Tomorrow is Wednesday. Go to bed alone tomorrow night. Don't let your nurse stay with you. When you are in bed, drink



'I will do anything if I can stay true to my dear love, Romeo.'

this liquid. You will feel cold and sleepy. Your skin will grow pale and you will not breathe. For forty-two hours you will seem to be dead. When Paris comes for you, he will think that you are dead. They will put you in your family's tomb.

'I will send a letter to Romeo. At the end of the forty-two hours, you will wake up and Romeo will take you away to Mantua. Are you brave enough to do this, or will fear stop you drinking the liquid?'

'Give me the drink. Don't speak of fear!' said Juliet.

'I will send Friar John to Romeo with a letter,' the friar said.

Juliet went home. 'I am sorry that I refused to marry Paris,' she said to her father. 'I was wrong. Let us prepare for the wedding.'

•

The next night, Juliet asked her nurse to leave the room.

'I am afraid,' she thought. 'What will happen if this liquid does not work? I am afraid that I will wake up before Romeo comes to me in the tomb. Romeo, Romeo, I am drinking this for you!'

Then she drank Friar Lawrence's liquid and fell back on her bed.

•

The Capulets prepared for the wedding, and on the Thursday morning, Juliet's nurse came to wake her.

She called her name. 'Are you still asleep? Come, my lady, wake up. 'At last she shook Juliet. 'Lady! Lady! Oh! Help! Help! My lady is dead!'

Juliet's parents heard her cries and ran into the room. Paris and Friar Lawrence were with them.

'Is Juliet ready to go to the church?' Friar Lawrence asked.

'She is ready to go,' Lord Capulet cried, 'but she will never return. Death has taken her.'

'She was a lovely young woman,' the friar said. 'Heaven wanted to share her with you. You could not stop her death. She is above

the clouds in heaven. You must not weep now. Dry your tears and take her to the tomb.'

'We have flowers and music for her wedding,' said Lord Capulet sadly. 'Now we will use them for her tomb.'

So they took Juliet to the tomb of the Capulets.

•

Romeo was far away in Mantua.

'I had a strange dream last night,' he remembered. 'I dreamed that Juliet came and found me dead. She kissed me and I was alive again.'

He saw his servant Balthazar coming towards him.

'Do you have any news from Verona?' he asked. 'How is my love? Is she well?'

But Balthazar answered, 'Her body is sleeping in the tomb of the Capulets. She is alive in heaven now.'

'What?' cried Romeo. 'Do you have a letter for me from the friar?'

'No.'

'Find me some horses. I must leave here tonight. Tonight I will lie with Juliet in her tomb.'

Balthazar was afraid. What was his master going to do?

Romeo went to a very poor chemist. This chemist sold medicines, but he needed more money so he also sold poison.

'If I pay this chemist with gold,' Romeo thought, 'he will give me a poison that will end my life.'

'Drink this poison. It will kill you immediately,' the chemist said.

'Buy food with my gold,' said Romeo, and he picked up the poisoned liquid.

•

Friar John returned to Friar Lawrence.

'Welcome,' said Friar Lawrence. 'What does Romeo say?'

Friar John looked very unhappy. 'I could not go to Mantua,' he said. 'I went to a house in Verona, looking for a friar to go with me. While I was there, officers came and locked all the doors and windows. They thought that there was a dangerous illness in the house. They did not let anyone in or out, and nobody wanted to touch your letter. Here it is.'

'This is terrible!' said Friar Lawrence. 'Go quickly! Bring an iron stick to my cell.'

'In three hours Juliet will wake up,' he thought. 'I will write to Mantua. But I must open the tomb and hide Juliet in my cell until Romeo arrives.'

•

Paris went to the Capulets' tomb, because he wanted to put flowers on it for Juliet. He heard people near the tomb and hid.

It was Romeo and Balthazar. 'Take this letter to my father,' Romeo said to his servant. 'Give me your lamp. I am going to say goodbye to my lady Juliet. Now go away.'

But Balthazar thought, 'I will hide near here. My master looks strange. What is he going to do?'

Paris heard a noise as Romeo broke open the tomb.

'It is Romeo!' he cried. 'What evil is he doing to the dead bodies? Romeo, I have caught you! You must die.'

'Yes, I must die,' said Romeo. 'That is why I am here. I came to kill myself. I do not want to hurt you, boy. Go away, and say that a madman told you to leave.'

But Paris made Romeo fight. Paris's servant ran to call the officers who were on guard through the night.

Romeo's sword wounded Paris.

'I am dying!' Paris cried. 'Place me in the tomb with Juliet.'

Romeo looked at the face of the dead man. 'It is Count Paris, one of Mercutio's family. Poor young man. I will put you in the tomb.'

He opened Juliet's tomb and looked at her face.

'Dear Juliet,' he said. 'Why are you still so beautiful? Is death keeping you here as his lover? Let me look at you again. Let my arms hold you for the last time. I will stay here with you forever.' He drank the poison. 'This poison acts quickly. With this kiss, I will die.'

Friar Lawrence came running towards the tomb. He saw Balthazar, and then he saw a light inside.

'Romeo, my master, has been in the tomb for more than half an hour,' Balthazar said.

Full of fear, the friar went into the tomb. He saw the dead bodies of Romeo and Paris, and at that moment, Juliet woke up.

'Where is my Romeo?' she asked.

'Lady,' said the friar, 'come out of this place of death. A greater power than ours has ruined all our plans. Your husband is dead and Paris, too. We can do nothing here. Come away with me. I will take you to a safe place.'

'Go! Leave this place. I will stay,' said Juliet.

The friar hurried away to find someone to help him.

Juliet looked at Romeo. 'What is this?' she asked herself. 'There is a cup in my true love's hand. Poison? Oh, Romeo, you have drunk it all and left none for me. I will kiss your lips; perhaps there is some poison on them.'

She kissed him, but then she heard the guards arrive. There was no more time. Juliet took Romeo's dagger and pushed it into her own heart.

The prince and his servants arrived at the tomb, followed by the Capulets and Montagues. The guards caught the weeping friar.

'What happened?' Prince Escalus asked. 'Why have you called me from my bed?'

'Some people in the street are crying, "Romeo!". Some are crying, "Juliet!", and some are crying, "Paris!",' Lady Capulet said. 'They are shouting and running towards our tomb.'



'Romeo is dead, and Juliet has killed herself.'

Then a guard told them, 'Count Paris is dead, Romeo is dead, and Juliet has killed herself.'

'Here is the friar,' said another guard, 'and here is Romeo's servant, Balthazar.'

'Prince, my wife died during the night,' Lord Montague said. 'She was very sad when my son left the city. Her sadness killed her.'

The prince turned to the friar. 'Tell me, Friar, what do you know about all this?'

The friar, in a few words, told the whole unhappy story. 'If these deaths are my fault, then punish me with death.'

'I know that you are a good man,' said the prince. 'Where is Romeo's servant? What can he tell us?'

'I told my master that Juliet was dead,' Balthazar said. 'He came here and told me to go away. He said he would kill me if I stayed.'

Paris's servant also told his story. 'My master came to put flowers on Juliet's tomb. He saw somebody and pulled out his sword. I ran away to find the guards.'

'Capulet, Montague,' the prince said sadly. 'These terrible things happened because your families hate each other. And I have also lost two members of my family.'

Capulet said to Montague, 'My daughter's marriage with your son, Romeo, has joined our families at last. Oh, brother Montague, give me your hand.'

'And so,' the prince said, 'this dark and cloudy morning has brought a sad peace. There will never be a sadder story than the story of Romeo and Juliet.'

Macbeth

At the time of this story, Duncan was the King of Scotland. Macbeth was a great lord and the leader of the Scottish army. Banquo was also a lord and an army leader.

Macbeth had won a great battle against an army from Norway. He and Banquo were coming back from the battle, riding over some wild, open land in a storm. In the wildest part they saw three witches sitting around a fire. The witches stopped the two men.

'Who are you?' asked Banquo. 'You look like women, but you have beards.'

'Speak!' said Macbeth. 'What are you?'

'Greetings, Macbeth, Lord of Glamis,' the first witch said.

'Greetings, Macbeth, Lord of Cawdor,' the second witch said.

'Greetings, Macbeth. You will be king,' the third witch said.

Then they turned to Banquo.

'You will not be king,' the third witch said. 'But your children and your grandchildren will become kings.'

Macbeth and Banquo rode away from the witches.

'I am already Lord of Glamis,' said Macbeth, 'but how can I become Lord of Cawdor? The Lord of Cawdor is still alive. And I do not believe that I will be king. They said your children will become kings, Banquo.'

At that moment, messengers from King Duncan came to Macbeth.

'The Lord of Cawdor helped the Norwegians,' one of them said. 'He fought against the king. Now the king wants you to be the new Lord of Cawdor.'

'Lord of Glamis and Lord of Cawdor,' Macbeth said to Banquo with surprise.

'If you believe the witches, you will become king,' said Banquo.

'Perhaps these witches are telling the truth — and perhaps they want to cause trouble and death.'

•

In Macbeth's castle, Lady Macbeth read a letter from her husband.

'The witches say that my husband will be king,' she thought. 'But Macbeth is too kind, too gentle. There are things that he must do, but he is afraid to do them. I must speak to him, and make him brave.'

Then Macbeth arrived at the castle. 'My dearest love, the king is coming here tonight,' he said. 'He wants to honour me.'

'When will he leave?'

'He says that he will leave tomorrow.'

'Oh, no! He must never leave! Macbeth, your face shows your thoughts and feelings. You must hide them. Leave everything to me.'

•

King Duncan arrived at Macbeth's castle with his two sons, Malcolm and Donalbain. After dinner, Macbeth came out of the dining hall.

'If I want to be king, I must kill King Duncan,' he said to himself. 'I must kill him quickly. But what will happen if I kill him? An act of this kind could harm me. The king is a guest in my house, so I should guard him against murderers, not kill him. Duncan is a good king and his death will cause great sorrow. No! I will not do it.'

Just then, Lady Macbeth came out of the dining hall. 'Why did you leave the room?' she asked.

'I do not want to kill the king,' said Macbeth. 'He is good to me. People like and admire me. I will not throw away their good opinion.'

Lady Macbeth was very angry with her husband. 'What are

you saying?' she asked. 'Why are you so afraid? You want to be king. Are you afraid to kill him?'

'I am a brave man,' Macbeth replied. 'I will do everything that a man should do — everything that is right.'

'You must be strong,' Lady Macbeth said.

'But what will happen if we fail?'

'Then we fail!' said Lady Macbeth. 'But if you are brave, we will succeed. Wait until Duncan is asleep. We will make everyone believe that the king's servants killed him. I will put something in their drink to make them sleep, and we will cover them with the king's blood.'

'Yes, we will do it,' said Macbeth. 'But we must look kind and happy, so no one knows our plans.'

The king and his two sons came out of the dining hall. The king was tired so he went to bed early.

Later that night, Banquo and his son Fleance met Macbeth in the garden of the castle.

'Here is a beautiful jewel from the king to your wife,' said Banquo. 'He has gone to bed.'

•

Midnight came. Lady Macbeth made the king's servants drunk, so they knew nothing. She took her dagger and went to the king's bedroom. Duncan was sleeping deeply after his long journey. His face reminded Lady Macbeth of her father and she could not kill him, so she left.

Macbeth looked at the dagger in his hand. 'The witches told the truth. I must go into Duncan's room and kill him,' he thought.

When he came out of the king's room, he saw his wife. 'I have done it,' he said. 'Did you hear anything? Did you speak? I thought I heard a voice. "Macbeth has murdered sleep," it said. "He will never sleep again."'

'I heard nothing,' Lady Macbeth said. 'You imagined it.'

Now, get some water and wash the blood from your hands. Why did you bring the dagger here? You must leave it in the king's bedroom. Take it back and cover the sleeping servants with blood.'

'I cannot go into that room and see the king's body again,' Macbeth said. 'I am afraid.'

'You are weak,' said Lady Macbeth. 'Give me the dagger. I will spread blood on the servants.'

When she came back, she showed her hands to Macbeth. 'Now look! My hands are as red as yours. But my heart is not as white with fear as your heart. Put on your night clothes. We want people to think that we are asleep.'

Suddenly there was a loud knock on the great gate of the castle.

'What is that?' cried Macbeth. 'Every noise frightens me.' He looked at his bloody hands. 'My hands! All the water in the oceans will not clean the blood from these hands!'

People were still beating on the gate. Macduff and Lennox, two Scottish lords, had arrived. Macbeth came out to greet them.

'Is the king awake?' asked Macduff.

'Not yet, but I will take you to his room.'

Macduff went into the king's room. A moment later, he ran out with a loud cry.

'What is the matter?' Lennox asked.

'It is too horrible!' Macduff cried. 'Quickly, wake Malcolm and Donalbain. Ring the castle bell.' Banquo came in. 'Oh, Banquo, Banquo!' cried Macduff. 'Our king is dead.'

Malcolm and Donalbain came out of their rooms.

'What is the matter?' Donalbain asked.

'Your father, the king, is dead!' Lennox said. 'We think his servants murdered him. They are covered with blood.'

'We must ask questions and try to find the answers,' Banquo said. 'This is a bloody piece of work. What does it mean?'

The king's two sons were afraid. Who could they trust ?

'I will go to England,' said Malcolm. 'Someone in this castle murdered our father. They are only pretending to be sad.'

'And I will go to Ireland,' said Donalbain. 'We will be safer in different countries.'

•

After that night, strange and frightening things happened in Scotland. There was black fear in everyone's heart.

Banquo did not trust Macbeth. 'Now Macbeth has everything,' he said to himself. 'The death of Duncan makes him king. King, Cawdor, Glamis — he is everything that the witches promised. But they promised something for me too. I will be the father of kings. Will that be true?'

Macbeth and Lady Macbeth invited people to a feast.



Macbeth and Lady Macbeth invited people to a feast.

'Fleance and I must ride out this afternoon,' Banquo said. 'But we will be back for the feast.'

'Good,' Macbeth replied. 'I hear that Duncan's sons, in England and Ireland, are telling lies about their father's murderer.'

When the room was empty, Macbeth called a servant. 'Bring in the two men who are waiting outside the palace gate,' he said.

'The witches said that Banquo's sons would be kings of Scotland,' he said to himself. 'I have done this terrible thing for Banquo and his children, not for myself. He must die, and Fleance, his son, must die too.'

The two men came in. They were murderers.

'Banquo is your enemy,' Macbeth said. 'He is my enemy, too. You must kill him. I will tell you where you can wait to catch him and his son.'

•

Before the feast began, Lady Macbeth talked to her husband.

'You spend too much time alone,' she said. 'Your only friends are your sad thoughts. It is too late to worry. Duncan is dead.'

'We are still in danger,' Macbeth replied. 'We both have terrible dreams every night. I am full of fear while the dead rest in peace.'

'Don't let anyone see that you are worried,' said his wife. 'Look happy when our guests come here tonight.'

'Yes, I will,' Macbeth said. 'And before night falls, something will happen. When you know what it is, you will say to me, "Well done!"'

•

But the two murderers had only carried out half of Macbeth's plan. They had killed Banquo, but Fleance escaped. One of the murderers returned at dinner time, when the lords and ladies were enjoying the feast.

'There is blood on your face,' Macbeth said to him.

'It is Banquo's blood,' the murderer replied. 'But I have bad news. Fleance is still alive.'

'Now I am still afraid,' Macbeth said to himself. He moved away from his guests and stood thinking.

'Sit down,' Lady Macbeth said. 'These people in the hall will notice your strange behaviour. Be happy among your friends!'

There was one empty seat at the table. Quietly the bloody ghost of the murdered Banquo sat down in it.

Ross, one of the lords, said to Macbeth, 'Won't you sit down with us? Here is an empty place.'

But Macbeth saw the ghost of Banquo in the chair. 'The table is full,' he said. 'Who did this?' His face was white with fear. No one else could see the ghost, so no one understood his words. 'You cannot say that I did it! 'Macbeth cried to the ghost. 'Don't shake your bloody hair at me!'



Macbeth saw the ghost of Banquo in the chair.

'My lord is often like this,' Lady Macbeth said to the guests. 'It is nothing. He will soon be well.'

In a low voice, Macbeth spoke to his wife. 'I have seen Banquo!' he said.

She was angry with him. 'You are looking at an empty chair!'

But the ghost appeared again to Macbeth.

'Look! He is there!' Macbeth cried.

Lady Macbeth could do nothing, so she asked everyone to leave. 'My husband is getting worse,' she told her guests.

'The ghost demands blood,' said Macbeth. 'Blood demands blood. Tomorrow I will go and see the three witches. I must know what will happen.'

'You need sleep,' said Lady Macbeth. 'Come, we will sleep.'

In the same wild place, the three witches were singing strange songs and putting mysterious things into a pot over a fire. They were making black magic.

Then they suddenly stopped. 'He's coming,' one of them said.

Macbeth stood there, looking at them. 'Give me answers to my questions,' he said.

'Speak!' said the first witch.

'Ask!' said the second witch.

'We will answer,' said the third witch. 'Do you want to hear the words from our mouths or from the mouths of our masters?'

'Call your masters!' Macbeth cried. 'Let me see them.'

Macbeth began to see strange and unreal things. Ghosts appeared in front of him.

The first ghost was the head of a soldier. It said, 'Macbeth! Macbeth! Watch Macduff. Watch him and protect yourself from him.'

'I do not know who you are,' Macbeth said. 'But thank you for your good advice.'

The second ghost was a child covered in blood. It said, 'Macbeth! Be brave! You cannot be hurt by any man who was born from a woman.'

The third ghost was a child wearing a crown. It carried a small tree in its hand. 'Be brave,' it said. 'Be proud, and do not worry. Your enemies will never beat you until Birnam Wood moves to Dunsinane Hill.'

Macbeth felt happier now. 'I was afraid of Macduff before,' he thought. 'Now I will make sure that he does not harm me. And how can the last two things ever happen? I am safe!'

He turned to the witches. 'Can you tell me if Banquo's children will be kings of this country?' he asked.

'Do not ask us any more questions,' the witches said.

'Answer me or I will curse you!' Macbeth cried.

Eight kings appeared, and then a figure like Banquo.

'Banquo is covered in blood,' cried Macbeth. 'He is pointing at them, showing me that they are his sons. I do not want to see any more!'

The witches danced around and then they disappeared.

Later, Macbeth heard that Macduff had run away to England.

'I know what to do,' Macbeth thought. 'I will burn down his castle and kill his wife and all his children.'

•

In England, Macduff was talking to King Duncan's son, Malcolm. 'When will these terrible things in Scotland end?' asked Malcolm.

Then Ross, another Scottish lord, came to see them.

'What is happening in Scotland?' asked Macduff.

'I have bad news,' answered Ross. 'Each day brings more sadness and trouble.'

'Go home,' said Malcolm. 'Tell my people that we will come very soon. The English have given me 10,000 men. We are coming to fight Macbeth.'

'That is good news,' said Ross. 'But I must give you bad news, Macduff. Something terrible has happened. Macbeth has taken your castle. He has killed your wife and all your children.'

'What! All my pretty children? Did you say all? And their mother?' Macduff cried.

'Your wife, children, servants — everyone that he could find in the castle,' Ross said.

'And I was not there,' said Macduff. 'Kind heavens, bring me face to face with this murderer. Now he will never escape me!'

•

Lady Macbeth was ill. Her servant spoke to the doctor.

'She cannot sleep. The king has gone away to fight against Macduff and Malcolm. Every night my lady gets up from her bed. She puts on her coat, takes some paper, writes on it and then goes back to bed. She does all these things in her sleep. She does not know what she is doing.'

'What does she say?' asked the doctor.

'I do not want to repeat her words,' the servant said.

As she spoke, Lady Macbeth walked slowly into the room, carrying a lamp.

'She hates to be in the dark,' said the lady. 'She always has a lamp by her side.'

'Her eyes are open,' said the doctor. 'What is she doing with her hands?'

'She does that very often, sometimes for a quarter of an hour. She is trying to wash her hands.'

'Listen!' said the doctor. 'She is speaking. I will write down her words.'

'There is still blood here on my hands,' Lady Macbeth said. 'Here is more blood. I did not know that an old man had so much blood in him. Will these hands never be clean? Wash your hands, put on your night clothes. Banquo is dead. He cannot come out of



Lady Macbeth walked slowly into the room . . .

his tomb. Someone is knocking at the gate! Go to bed!'

'I have heard enough,' the doctor said. 'I cannot help her. Only the gods can help her now.'

•

Soon everyone knew that a great English army was on its way. The Scottish lords rode with the army and talked about their king, Macbeth.

'Some say that he is mad,' said one.

'His men do not love or trust him. They act only because he orders them to act. His title of king means nothing. It is like a big man's coat worn by a little thief,' said another.

'Well, let us march on towards Birnam!'

Macbeth's mind was sick, but he still felt safe. 'They cannot hurt me,' he said to himself. 'How can Birnam Wood move to Dunsinane? How can I die at the hands of a man who was not born from a woman? Malcolm was born from a woman.'

Soon Malcolm, Macduff and their soldiers were riding near Birnam Wood.

'Tell each soldier to take a branch from a tree and hide behind it,' Malcolm said. 'Then Macbeth will not see us.'

Back in the castle, Macbeth heard the sound of women crying. He called a servant.

'Why are people crying?' he asked.

'The queen is dead, my lord.'

'This is not a good time for her to die,' Macbeth said. 'I cannot think about it now.'

A messenger came running in.

'You have come to tell me something. Tell me quickly!' cried Macbeth.

'My good lord,' the messenger said. 'I have just seen something very strange. I was standing on guard and I looked towards Birnam — and the forest began to move!'

'If you are lying to me,' said Macbeth, 'I will hang you from the nearest tree until you are dead.'

But it was true. The soldiers were carrying branches in front of them as they walked. Nobody knew how many men were moving towards Dunsinane.

Macbeth still felt that he was safe. Every man was born from a woman!

He heard wild shouts and the noise of sword striking sword. He heard the cries of dying men and the shouts of his enemies.

Suddenly Macduff stood in front of him. 'Macbeth, you killed all the people that I love,' he cried. 'Show me your face!'

'Move back!' said Macbeth. 'I have already killed too many of your family.' But Macduff was not listening. He was there to kill Macbeth. 'You are wasting your time!' cried Macbeth. 'No man can kill me except one who was not born from a woman!'

'Let me tell you, then,' cried Macduff. 'I was cut from my mother's body early. I was not born in the normal way.'

Macbeth knew then that he would die. But he was a brave man in this final battle. 'Come! We will fight to the end,' he shouted. 'And there will be a curse on the first man who cries, "Stop! Enough!"'

Macduff's anger made him strong and he killed Macbeth. Then he cut off Macbeth's head and showed it to the English army, the Scottish lords and their soldiers.

Malcolm, their new king, said, 'I thank you all from my heart for helping me.'

The tired men went home. Soon, they all came together again at Scone, to see the crown of Scotland put on the head of their new young king.

King Lear

King Lear, King of Britain, came into the hall with his three daughters: Goneril, who was married to the Duke of Albany; Regan, who was married to the Duke of Cornwall, and Cordelia. Cordelia was not yet married, but the King of France hoped to make her his wife.

The king spread out a map. 'I have separated my kingdom into three parts,' he said. 'I am old, and I do not want to govern my kingdom any longer. Let younger people do the work. So I will give the best part of my kingdom to the daughter who loves me most. Goneril, you are my eldest daughter. You must speak first.'



King Lear, King of Britain, came into the hall with his three daughters.

'Sir,' said Goneril, 'I love you as much as I love my life, my health, my beauty and my honour. I love you as much as any daughter can ever love her father. I cannot put into words how much I love you.'

'What shall I say?' thought Cordelia. 'I love him, but I cannot say such things.'

King Lear was very pleased with Goneril's speech. He said to her, 'I will give all the land between these two lines on the map to you, your husband and your children. Now, what does my second daughter, Regan, say?'

'I love you as much as my sister,' Regan replied. 'But she has not said enough. Nothing pleases me except my love for you. My only happiness comes from my love for you.'

The king was pleased with Regan's reply and he gave a third of his kingdom to her.

Then it was Cordelia's turn to speak. 'Now,' said her father, 'what do you say? Shall I give you the richest part of my kingdom? Shall I give you more than I gave to your sisters? Speak!'

Cordelia answered, 'I can say nothing, my lord.'

'Nothing?' the king asked. He was surprised by her words.

'Nothing,' she said.

'Nothing will bring you nothing. Speak again.'

'I cannot put my feelings into words,' Cordelia said. 'I love you as much as any daughter can love her father. You are my father: you gave me life, cared for me, loved me. So of course I love you. I obey you. I honour you. Why do my sisters have husbands if you have all their love? When I marry, I will give my husband half my love.'

'Do you really mean that?' Lear asked. 'You are very young and unkind.'

'I am young, my lord, but I am telling you the truth.'

'Truth? Then you will only receive truth. From today I will not be your father. You will be a stranger to me and to my heart.

Cornwall and Albany, you can have Cordelia's share of my kingdom. I will stay with each of you for one month. I will only bring 100 knights with me. People will still call me king, but you will share the government of all my lands.'

The King of France came in.

'I do not want you to take Cordelia as your wife,' Lear said to him. 'You should look for a better woman.'

'This is very strange,' said the King of France. 'She was your favourite daughter. Why have you changed your mind about her?'

'Tell the king that I have lost my father's love because I do not have a tongue like my sisters. I am glad that I do not speak like them,' interrupted Cordelia.

'You have not pleased me,' Lear said. 'You are not my daughter. Why were you ever born?'

But the King of France loved Cordelia. 'Fair Cordelia, your father refuses to keep you, but I love you. Your loneliness makes you even lovelier to me. You are a good woman. I will happily marry you. I will make you the queen of my heart and queen of my lovely country. Say goodbye to your father, the king. Better things are waiting for you.'

Cordelia said goodbye to her father. Then she turned to her sisters. 'I know what you are doing!' she said. 'Take care of our father.'

'Do not tell us our duty!' said Regan.

'Look after your lord of France. He is marrying you because he pities you,' said Goneril.

'You are clever and you hide your faults. In time, people will see the truth,' Cordelia replied.

'Come, Cordelia,' said the King of France, and they left the castle.

'Sister,' said Goneril, 'I suppose our father will stay with me tonight.'

'Yes, he will. And next month he will come to us.'

'You see how he changes his mind. He always loved Cordelia most. He was foolish to throw her out now. As he grows older, he will become more and more difficult. We must be ready for that.'

•

The Earl of Gloucester was a great lord. He had two sons, Edgar and Edmund. Edgar was his true son from his marriage, and Edmund was the earl's bastard, Edgar's half-brother. Edmund hated Edgar.

At that moment, Edmund was in a room in Gloucester's castle.

'There should be no difference between Edgar and me,' he thought. 'Why do people think that he is more important than I am? My body is as strong as his. My mind is as clear as his. But he is the next Earl of Gloucester and he will get all our father's land. Well, Edgar, I will get the land. At the moment my father loves us equally, so I must make him hate you.' He looked at a letter in his hand. It was part of his plot to destroy Edgar.

Just then his father, Gloucester, entered. Edmund pretended to hide the letter.

'Why are you trying to hide that letter?' asked Gloucester.

'It is a letter from my brother Edgar,' Edmund said. 'I have not finished reading it. I do not think that you ought to read it.'

'Give me the letter. Let me see it,' Gloucester said.

He read:

*We will not get our money until we are too old to enjoy it.
Come to me and I will tell you more. If our father dies soon,
I will let you have half of his money. You will be a rich man.
And you will earn the love of your brother,*

Edgar

'My son Edgar! Did he write this letter? How did you get it?' Gloucester asked.

'My lord, someone passed it in through my window. Edgar believes that it is wrong for sons to wait until their fathers die of old age. I have often heard him say that.'

'That seems to be what he says in his letter! He is evil! Go and find him. Where is he?'

'I do not know,' said Edmund. 'But please do not do anything to my brother. Wait until you can prove it. What does he intend to do? I will try to find out for you.'

'Edmund, find him. Make him trust you and tell you his plans.'

Gloucester left the room. Soon Edmund saw Edgar coming towards him.

'Have you seen my father?' he asked Edgar.

'I saw him last night,' Edgar said.

'Did you talk?'

'Yes, for two hours,' said Edgar.

'Did you end the conversation as good friends? Was he angry with you?' Edmund asked.

'No,' said Edgar. 'Why?'

'Because he is very angry with you now,' said Edmund. 'I am afraid that you are in danger.'

'An evil person has spoken against me,' Edgar said.

'I am afraid that is true, brother. Go to my room. At the right time, I will take you to Lord Gloucester. You can speak to him then.'

Edgar left and Edmund smiled to himself. 'My father believes everything I say. My brother is a good man and he thinks no one could plot against him. I am clever and I will get everything that I want — everything that my birth has taken away from me.'

•

King Lear was foolish to trust Goneril. He stayed in her house with his 100 knights, but he was a difficult visitor. Now Goneril had power over him, and she became an unkind daughter.

'Behave coldly when you see him,' she said to her servant. 'Tell all my servants to be unfriendly with his knights. I am going to write to my sister. She and I agree that we do not want our father to stay with us. She will behave in the same way.'

Lear came into the room. 'You look angry, daughter,' he said. 'You often look angry. Why?'

'Your knights are always quarrelling,' Goneril answered. 'They make a lot of noise. My house is in disorder. It is too much! I will not allow it! I have spoken to you about this before. I believe that you tell them to behave badly. I cannot stop them because you are their master. I am your daughter, but I must speak.'

'Are you my daughter?'

'Listen, sir,' said Goneril. 'Be sensible! Recently you have changed. What are these feelings that have changed you? Be the man you really are.'

'Who can tell me what I really am?' cried Lear. 'I really thought that I had daughters.'

'You are old,' said Goneril, 'and you should be wise. But you keep 100 knights and their followers here in my house and they behave badly. I beg you, send some of your knights away. Keep just a few men. They should be wise and older men like you.'

'Darkness and devils! Bring my horse and call my men. You are an unnatural child! I will not trouble you any more! I still have one daughter left. I was mad - I made a mistake when I trusted you.'

Lear went out, and Goneril heard him shout in surprise.

'What? She has already sent away fifty of my knights? But I have another daughter. I am sure that she will be kind. When she hears this, she will hit Goneril's face with her own fingers.'

•

In the Earl of Gloucester's castle, Edmund called Edgar to him. He knew that their father was in the next room. The two

brothers talked for a minute, and then Edmund said, 'My father is coming! I can hear him.'

He lowered his voice to a whisper. 'He has ordered me to make you a prisoner. I must pretend to pull out my sword and attack you. You must pretend to defend yourself'

Their swords struck each other. Then Edmund whispered, 'Now escape! Run away, quickly!'

Edgar ran out.

Edmund struck his own arm with his sword and wounded himself. 'Father! Father!' he cried.

Gloucester came in. 'Where is he, Edmund?'

'Look, sir! I am bleeding. Edgar told me to murder you. When I refused, he attacked and wounded me. He was frightened by the noise I made, so he ran away'

'We must find him immediately!' said Gloucester.

'I tried to make him give up his plot against you but I failed,' Edmund said. 'Then I said that I would tell you. He said, "You poor bastard, no one will believe you." He said that you loved him. You would not believe that he wrote the letter or plotted against you.'

'How could he say that it was not his letter?' Gloucester asked. 'I will send a picture of him to every part of the kingdom. I will make sure that he does not escape. Edmund, you are my good son. You will have all my land when I die.'

Cornwall and Regan entered the room. They had come to visit Gloucester.

Cornwall said to Gloucester, 'We have heard strange things about your son Edgar. Did he really want to kill you?'

'Oh!' cried Gloucester. 'My old heart is broken! I am ashamed that you know about this.'

'Wasn't Edgar a friend of those knights who came to my house with my father?' asked Regan.

'I do not know,' said Gloucester.

'Yes,' said Edmund. 'He was.'

'Then I am not surprised,' said Regan. 'They advised Edgar to kill you, Gloucester. They wanted to get your money. My sister sent me a letter about those knights. If my father brings them to my house, I will not be there.'

•

When Lear arrived at Gloucester's castle, Gloucester came out and spoke to him.

'Do my daughter and Cornwall really refuse to speak to me?'

Lear said. 'You say that they are sick. You say that they are tired, that they travelled all night! I do not believe it. I, the king, wish to speak to Cornwall. I wish to speak to my daughter. Tell them to come out to me now!'

'I wish there was no trouble between you,' said Gloucester, as he went into the castle.

'Oh, my heart! My heart!' cried Lear. 'Do not break!'

Gloucester came back with Cornwall, Regan and their servants.

'Good morning to you both,' Lear said.

'I am happy to see you,' Regan replied.

'Of course you are happy to see me. I am your father,' said Lear. 'Dear Regan, your sister has been so unkind to me.'

'I cannot believe that my sister failed in her duty to you. You must not blame her. She only tried to make your noisy followers behave. You are old, sir. We know your needs better than you do. Let us help you. Please, sir, say that you were wrong. Go back and ask Goneril to forgive you.'

'Ask her to forgive me!' cried Lear. 'Do you want me to go to her and say, "Dear daughter, I am old. I beg you to give me clothes and a bed and food."?' Never! She sent away half my knights. Let heaven strike her!'

'Will you curse me like that when you are angry?' said Regan.

'Oh, never, Regan! You are kind and gentle. You will never hurt me. You have kind eyes, not cold eyes like hers. You will not forget that I gave you half my kingdom.'

Just then, Goneril arrived.

'Aren't you ashamed to see me?' said Lear. 'And you, Regan! Why are you taking her hand?'

'Please, father, go back and stay with my sister until the end of the month,' said Regan.

'Return to Goneril? Without my knights? Never! I will live in the open air without a roof.'

'If that is what you want, then do it, sir,' said Goneril.

'Please, daughter, do not make me mad. I will not trouble you again, my child. Goodbye. We do not have to meet again. I can stay with Regan.'

'No, sir,' said Regan. 'I did not expect you. I am not ready for your visit. You have fifty followers! One house cannot hold so many knights. Bring twenty-five. You do not need more. My servants can look after you.'

'Why does he need twenty-five knights?' Goneril asked. 'Why does he need ten? Or five?'

'Why does he need any followers?' said Regan.

'The poorest people have more than they need to keep them alive,' Lear said. 'Oh, you gods, help me. Make me angry. Daughters, I will do terrible things to you both! Do you think you will make me weep? No, I will not weep. My heart will break into a thousand pieces before I weep. Oh, I will go mad!'

He went away, followed by Gloucester.

A storm began. 'We must go inside,' Cornwall said.

'This castle is too small to hold the old man and his knights,' Regan said.

'It is his fault. Let him suffer,' said Goneril.

'I will let him stay at my home,' Regan said. 'But not one of his followers will enter the house.'

Gloucester came back to them. 'The king is very angry. He has called for his horse. I do not know where he is going.'

'Shut your doors, Lord Gloucester,' said Cornwall. 'Come in out of the storm.'

Gloucester's men were hunting Edgar. They watched all the roads, so he could not escape.

'I will put mud on my face,' he thought. 'My hair will be long and dirty and I will wear old clothes. The country is full of mad people, shouting and begging. They travel through the farms and villages. I will be one of them, and I will call myself Poor Tom.'

Lear was also caught in the storm. He was losing his mind, and sometimes he was completely mad. He began to talk to the weather.

'Fires of the stormy sky above me, burn my head of white hair! Thunder, you shake everything, but I do not care what you do to me. I did not give you my lands or call you my children. You do not have to give me anything. Here I stand, your servant, a poor, weak old man. But do not join my two daughters and fight against an old man. Oh, here is a hut. I can rest here until my daughters come to apologize.'

Edgar was inside the hut. He came out, pretending to be a madman. 'Oh! Oh!' he cried. 'Poor Tom is cold! The devil has led him through fire and through water. The devil has put knives in his bed, and poison in his food. Poor Tom!'

'What! Did you give everything to your two daughters?' Lear asked.

'Poor Tom has no daughters,' Edgar said.

'Of course you have daughters. Only daughters can be so cruel. Come with me and we can talk about our cruel daughters.'



Lear was also caught in the storm.

Gloucester left his castle and came to find the king. He found Lear and Edgar, but he did not recognize his son.

'King Lear, your daughters ordered me to close the doors of my castle against you,' he said. 'I cannot obey - their commands are too hard. I came to find you. Let me take you to a place where there is a warm fire and some food.'

Lear did not understand him and spoke wild, broken words.

'Ask him again, my lord Gloucester,' said Edgar. 'He is mad, just like Poor Tom.'

'Can you blame him?' Gloucester asked. 'His daughters want him to die. I am almost mad myself. I had a son once, and now he is a stranger to me. Not long ago, he wanted to kill me. I loved him so much.'

Gloucester led them to a room in a farmhouse near his castle. Then he went out to look for things to make the room more comfortable.

Soon he came back. 'There is a plot to kill the king,' he cried. 'Quick, take him towards Dover. You will find help there.'

They carried the sleeping old man away to Dover.

•

In Gloucester's castle, Edmund was speaking to Cornwall. Edgar and Gloucester were, he said, both evil men.

'I discovered that my father is a traitor,' Edmund said. 'The French army is going to attack us. This letter shows that my father knows about the attack. He welcomes it!'

'Come with me,' said Cornwall. 'I will make you a very rich man.'

Cornwall found Goneril and Regan in another part of Gloucester's castle. He said to Goneril, 'Go quickly to your husband, Albany. Show him this letter. The French army has landed.' Then he said to his servants, 'Find the traitor Gloucester and bring him here.'

'Kill him!' said Regan.

'Take out his eyes!' said Goneril.

'Leave him to me,' answered Cornwall. Then he said to Edmund, 'Go with Goneril. I am going to punish your father, the traitor. I do not want you to watch.'

So Goneril and Edmund left.

Two or three men brought Gloucester to Cornwall and Regan.

'Tie his arms,' ordered Cornwall. 'Make sure that he cannot escape.'

'My friends,' cried Gloucester, 'what are you doing? You are guests in my house. Do not do this to me!'

But the servants tied him up. The evil Regan laughed. 'Tighter!' she cried. 'Don't be kind to him! He is a traitor.'

'I am not a traitor,' Gloucester cried.

Regan went to him and pulled his white beard.

'Now, sit,' said Cornwall. 'Tell me about the letters that came from France. And where is the mad king? Where did you send him?'

They turned Gloucester's simple, true answers against him.

'I am tied up like a poor animal,' Gloucester said. 'I sent the king to Dover. I do not want to see your evil fingers take out his poor old eyes. But I will see God punish you. You are evil children.'

'You are wrong! You will never see anything,' cried Cornwall. 'Men! Hold the chair! You will not see because I am going to take your eyes out!'

'Help! Help!' Gloucester shouted.

One of Cornwall's servants ran to stop his master. 'Stop!' he cried. 'I have served you for many years, but you must stop!'

'You dog!' cried Regan.

Cornwall pulled out his sword and attacked the servant. Regan took a sword from another man and wounded Cornwall's servant.

'Oh, my lord,' cried the dying servant to Gloucester, 'he will be punished. You will see.'

'He will see nothing!' said Cornwall, and he took out both Gloucester's eyes.

Gloucester screamed in pain. 'Where is my son Edmund? Edmund, help me!'

'Traitor!' said Regan. 'Edmund hates you. Edmund told us that you were helping the King of France.'

'I was wrong about Edgar!' Gloucester said. 'Edgar was my true and honest son. I was wrong not to trust him. Kind gods, forgive me, and help him.'

Regan said to the servants, 'Throw him out of the gates and let him smell his way to Dover.'

A man went out with the blind Gloucester. Regan went away with her husband, Cornwall. His servant had wounded him during the fight and he was bleeding.

•

In a wild place, Edgar was walking alone.

'My life cannot get worse,' he thought. 'But that is better than living in fear. I can still hope and all changes will make my life better.'

He saw his father coming slowly towards him. An old man was leading him. He heard Gloucester say to the old man, 'Go away, good friend. You will suffer if people see you with me. You will get into trouble. You cannot help me.'

'You cannot see. What will you do?' asked the old man.

'When I could see, I made great mistakes. Oh, Edgar, Edgar! I want to live long enough to hold you in my arms again! Is someone there?'

'It is a mad beggar,' said the old man. 'It is poor, mad Tom.'

'Poor Tom is cold,' said Edgar. 'Your poor, sweet eyes! They are covered in blood!'

'Do you know the way to Dover, Poor Tom?' asked Gloucester.

'Yes, I know the way,' Tom replied.

'There is a rock at Dover, high above the sea. If you take me to the edge of it, I will give you a jewel. You will be a rich man.'

'Give me your arm. Poor Tom will lead you.'

•

Goneril and Edmund were talking in front of Albany's castle when Goneril's servant came out to them.

'The Duke of Albany is behaving strangely,' the servant said. 'I tell him good things and he gets angry. I tell him bad things and he is pleased. I told him about the French army and he smiled. I told him that you are here, and he said, "That is bad!" I told him about Gloucester and that Edmund was a loyal friend. He said that I was a fool.'

'Our secret wishes will come true,' said Goneril to Edmund. 'This good servant will take my messages to you. Wear this jewel for me, Edmund. Let me kiss you.'

'Madam, my lord is coming,' whispered the servant, and Edmund went away.

'Oh, Goneril,' said Albany to his wife, 'you are an evil woman. You will come to a terrible end.'

'Do not say any more!' said Goneril. 'Your words are foolish.'

'Evil people believe that wise and good people are foolish. What have you done? You have made your father mad. Heaven will judge you.'

'Fool!' answered his wife. 'The King of France's army is here. Our country is not prepared. And you sit there and say, "Oh, why are they doing this?"'

At that moment a messenger rushed in.

'Do you have any news?' asked Albany.

'Oh, my lord, the Duke of Cornwall is dead. He went to take out Lord Gloucester's eyes and his servant wounded him. Now he is dead!'

'Oh, poor Gloucester! Has he lost both eyes?' said Albany.

'Both, both, my lord,' the messenger replied. Then he turned to Goneril. 'I have a letter from your sister, madam. You must answer it quickly.'

'Does Gloucester's son, Edmund, know what has happened?' asked Albany.

'Yes, my lord. Edmund told Cornwall that the Earl of Gloucester hoped for help from the French.'

Albany said, 'I must thank Gloucester. He has shown great love to the king. And I must punish those evil people who took out his eyes.'

•

The French army was in a camp near Dover. Cordelia was with them, but the French king had returned to France because he was suddenly needed there.

Cordelia was speaking to her doctor in an army tent. 'Someone saw my father only a short time ago. He was as mad as the troubled sea waves. He was singing loudly and he was wearing a crown of flowers.'

She turned to an officer and said, 'Send out soldiers. Search every field and bring my father to me.' Then she asked the doctor, 'Is it possible to make his mind well again?'

'He needs to rest,' said the doctor. 'But there are also plants which will help him to forget his pain.'

'Search for him,' said Cordelia. 'I am afraid that he will try to kill himself.'

A messenger ran in. 'I have news, madam!' he cried. 'The British army is marching in this direction.'

'We know that already,' said Cordelia, 'and we are prepared. Oh, dear father, we have not come to take control of the country, but only to help you.'

•

Goneril's servant came to Gloucester's castle, carrying a letter from Goneril to Edmund. Edmund was not in the castle, so Regan saw the letter.

'I do not like this,' said Regan. 'Why is she writing to Edmund? I am going to read this letter. Give it to me. I know that Goneril does not love her husband, and I have seen her look strangely at Edmund. Does she love him? Servant, you know everything that Goneril plans and thinks. Listen to me. My husband is dead. Edmund and I have talked. He is *my* man, not your lady's. Tell that to my sister.'

Then she said, 'And find that blind traitor Gloucester! I will give a lot to the person who kills him. People feel sorry for him, and that could harm us.'

•

In the fields near Dover, Edgar was leading Gloucester by the hand.

'When will we come to the top of that high rock?' asked Gloucester.

'You are climbing up to it now,' answered Edgar. 'Isn't it hard work?'

'The ground feels flat to me.'

'No, it is very steep. Listen. Can you hear the sea?'

'No, I cannot,' Gloucester said.

'You have lost your eyes and your other senses are failing too. Come, sir. Here is the place. It is terrible to look down so far! The birds down there are the size of insects. The fishermen on the shore look like mice. I cannot look — I am afraid of falling!'

'Lead me to the place where you are standing,' ordered Gloucester.

'Give me your hand,' said Edgar. 'You are now just one step from the edge.'

'Leave my hand,' said Gloucester. 'Here is a purse, my friend. There is a valuable jewel inside it. You are a poor man — this jewel

will make you rich. Go away, further away. Say goodbye to me. Let me hear you leave.'

'Goodbye, sir,' said Edgar.

'Now I must say goodbye to life,' said Gloucester. 'My sadness will end for ever. If Edgar is alive, God will take care of him.'

He stepped forward and fell - but he only fell on to the ground at his feet.

Now Edgar used a different voice to pretend to be somebody else.

'Alive or dead? Ah! You, sir, friend! Who are you, sir?'

'Go away!' said Gloucester. 'Go away and let me die!'

'It is wonderful that you are alive!' said Edgar. 'You must be a bird. You fell from such a terrible height and you did not break like an egg. Look up and see how far you fell.'

'I have no eyes. Am I still alive? I wanted to end my life.'

'Give me your arm,' Edgar said. 'Stand up. You can feel your legs. Who brought you to the top of the rock?'

'A poor unhappy beggar,' Gloucester replied.

'It was a devil, but the gods saved you.'

'Yes,' Gloucester said. 'From this moment, I will accept my troubles bravely. When my heart cries out, "Enough! Enough!" I will die.'

Lear came towards them, dressed in wild flowers.

'Oh!' cried Edgar. 'What a terrible sight!'

Lear came nearer, shouting mad words.

'I know that voice,' Gloucester said. 'It is the king. Let me kiss his hand.'

Then Cordelia's men arrived, looking for Lear.

'Here he is!' called their leader. 'Hold him! Your dear daughter has—'

'Daughter! Am I a prisoner?' cried Lear. 'Will nobody help me? I will die bravely! I am a king! Do you not know that?'

'You are the king, and we obey you,' the leader of the men said.

'Catch me, then! Run after me and catch me!' Lear ran away, and the others ran after him.

'Are you still there?' Gloucester asked Edgar. 'Who are you?'

'I am only a poor man,' Edgar answered. 'Take my hand, and I will lead you to a safe place.'

But Goneril's servant was there. 'Good,' he said. 'I have found Gloucester. His eyeless head will earn me a lot of money!'

He pulled out his sword, but Edgar stepped quickly between the man and Gloucester. He fought the servant without a sword, but he knocked the man down.

'Oh, I am going to die!' cried the servant. 'Take this bag. There is a letter inside it. Give the letter to Edmund and use the money to put me in a tomb.'

Edgar opened the letter. He read:

Remember our promises and kill my husband. Then I will be your wife.

Goneril

'I will show this letter to Albany' Edgar said to himself. 'It is a good thing for him that I have learned his wife's plans.' Then he turned to Gloucester. 'Come, my lord,' he said, 'I will lead you to a friend who can help you and keep you safe. I can hear drums beating in the distance.'

•

In a tent in the French camp, Cordelia was talking to the doctor.

'How is the king?' she asked.

'He is sleeping,' the doctor replied. 'I have dressed him in clean clothes and I will ask the servants to bring him here. Stay close to him when we wake him, my lady. I think he will get better.'

Cordelia kissed her father. 'This kiss will make you better. My two sisters have done great harm to you.'

She turned to the doctor. 'He is awake now,' she said. 'Speak to him.'

'It is better that you speak, madam.'

'Sir,' Cordelia said to her father, 'do you know me?'

'You have come from heaven,' Lear said. 'When did you die?'

'Oh, look at me, sir. Take my hand and give me your love. No! You must not fall to your knees!'

'I think I know you, but I am not sure,' Lear cried. 'Do not laugh at me. I think that this lady is my child, Cordelia.'

'She is! She is!' Cordelia wept.

'Do not weep! If you have poison for me, I will drink it. I know you cannot love me. Your sisters were bad to me. You have a reason to hate me, but they have not.'

'No, no! I do not hate you!'

'Am I in France?' Lear asked.

'You are in your own kingdom, sir,' Cordelia answered. 'Will you let me help you?'

'Yes, yes, dear daughter. Please forgive me. I am old and foolish.'

•

Edmund was in the British camp near Dover. He was commander of the British army.

'Sweet lord,' said Regan to Edmund, 'tell me the truth. Do you love my sister Goneril? Are you close to her?'

'No, I promise you that I am not, madam,' Edmund replied.

Regan did not believe him. She thought it would be better to lose the coming battle than to lose this man to her sister.

Albany and Goneril arrived and they all prepared for battle. The sisters hated each other more than ever. Each sister knew that the other sister wanted Edmund.

In one of the tents, Albany spoke to Edgar, who was still pretending to be a stranger.

'Before you fight in battle,' said Edgar, 'open this letter. If you

win, send for me. I can bring someone who will prove that the words in this letter are true.'

He went out, leaving Albany alone. Then Edmund came in. The enemy was very near, so Albany went to meet them with his army.

'I love both these sisters,' thought Edmund. 'Which shall I marry? If I choose Goneril, then Albany must die. He wants to forgive Lear and Cordelia, but I will not forgive them! If we win, they will fall into my power.'

•

The battle was bitter. In the end, Edmund and the British army were more powerful than the French army. The British soldiers took Lear and Cordelia as prisoners.

'I am only worried about you,' Cordelia said to her father. 'I do not care about myself. Do you think we will see my sisters?'

'No!' said Lear. 'We must not see them! Let us go away to prison. When you ask for my love, I will ask you to forgive me. We will sing and tell old stories and laugh.'

'Take them away,' said Edmund. He sent for a captain. 'Your orders are in this letter. Will you obey me?'

'I will, sir,' the man said.

'Go, then, and do it. Do exactly what I say.'

Albany, Goneril, Regan and their soldiers arrived.

'You are holding the prisoners from this battle,' Albany said to Edmund. 'I want you to bring them here.'

'People feel very sorry for the old king,' Edmund said. 'I thought it was wise to keep him in a secret place. Soldiers are guarding him, and I sent Cordelia with him. I will bring them to you tomorrow.'

Albany was very angry that Edmund had taken Lear and Cordelia away without his permission. 'Sir,' he said to Edmund, 'in this war you are under my command.'

There was a quarrel. Edmund said that he was the new Earl of Gloucester. At the same time, the sisters quarrelled too. Each sister said that Edmund was her lover.

'You cannot say that you love him when you are married to me,' Albany said to Goneril. 'Edmund, you and Goneril are traitors. If no one else comes to prove it, I will prove it myself with my sword.'

Regan suddenly grew faint. 'Oh, I am ill!' she cried.

'If she is not ill,' thought Goneril, 'I have made a mistake and mixed her drink wrongly.'

'I will fight any man who calls me a traitor,' shouted Edmund.

'You will fight alone,' Albany replied. 'I have sent all your men away.'

'Oh! I feel worse!' said Regan. Albany ordered the servants to take her to her tent.

Then Edgar came in. He was carrying a sword, and his face was hidden.

'Pull out your sword,' he cried to Edmund. 'You were disloyal to your brother, your father and Lord Albany. You are a traitor!'

'My sword will answer you,' cried Edmund.

They fought and Edmund was wounded.

'This is a trick,' said Goneril. 'By the laws of war, you do not have to fight an enemy unless you know his name.'

'Shut your mouth, woman,' said Albany, 'or I will shut it with this paper.' He waved her letter to Edmund in the air. 'Ah! I can see that you recognize it!'

Goneril ran out.

'Who are you?' said Edmund to the man who had wounded him.

'My name is Edgar. I am your father's son.'

Albany took Edgar's hand. 'I never hated you or your father. Where did you hide? How did you know what happened to your father?'

In a few words Edgar told his story.

'Only half an hour ago,' he said, 'I told my father who I was. I told him everything. But, I am sorry to say, it was too much for his heart. His happiness and his sadness were too much for him and he died.'

A man entered, holding a bloody knife in his hand.

'What does this mean?' asked Albany.

'Your lady, sir, your lady —'

'Lady Goneril poisoned Regan because of her love for me,' Edmund said. 'And now it seems that she has killed herself'

Servants brought in the bodies of Goneril and Regan. Edmund was also dying.

'I am afraid of death,' he said. 'I must try to do one good act before I die. Send men to the castle. I told my soldiers to kill Lear and Cordelia. I gave them secret orders to make the people there say that Cordelia killed herself.'

After the servants carried Edmund away, Lear came in with Cordelia in his arms.

'I know when someone is dead and when she is alive,' he cried. 'She is as dead as the earth. A curse on you, you murderers. You are all traitors! I wanted to save her. Now she has gone for ever.'

He bent down and seemed to listen to her. 'Ha! Her voice was always soft, gentle and low. That is an excellent thing in a woman.'

A messenger came in. 'Edmund is dead, my lord.'

'And my poor child is dead,' said Lear. 'He could not breathe. Will you, please, undo this button ... Thank you, sir.'

He fell, and Edgar ran to him. 'Look up, my lord. No — he is dead.'

'It is surprising that he lived for so long,' said Albany.

Edgar shook his head sadly. 'We younger ones must live with the unhappiness of these sad times.'



Lear came in with Cordelia in his arms.

ACTIVITIES

Romeo and Juliet

Before you read

- 1 This is a very famous love story. Have you seen it at the theatre, at the cinema or on television? What do you know about the story?
- 2 Find these words in your dictionary. They are all in the story.
cell Count dagger evil feast Friar hatred master sword tomb truth
 - a Which words are titles or names for people?
 - b Which are words for things that you fight with?
 - c Which are words for places?
 - d Which are bad qualities?
 - e What is the opposite of a lie?
 - f Which is a word for a big meal?
- 3 Find these verbs in your dictionary:
beg curse quarrel weep wound
 - a Which words are also nouns?
 - b Which verb means:
 - cry?
 - hurt?
 - argue?
 - ask for money?

What is the other verb in your language?

After you read

- 4 Answer these questions.
 - a Why is Romeo unhappy at the beginning of the play? What happens when he meets Juliet?
 - b Who is Friar Lawrence? How does he help Romeo and Juliet?
- 5 Describe the deaths of Romeo and Juliet in your own words.
- 6 List all the named characters who die in the story. How do they die?

- 7 Complete these sentences to show people's relationships with each other.

Juliet is Lord Capulet's.....Tybalt is Juliet's.....and Lord Capulet's.....The Prince of Verona is Paris's.....Paris wants to become Juliet's.....

Macbeth

Before you read

- 8 This is a play about Scotland in the eleventh century, when it was at war with England. Find Scotland on a map. What do you know about the relationship between the two countries now?
- 9 Answer questions about the words in *italics*. Use your dictionary to help you.

battle crown honour sorrow witch

- a If there is a *battle* in an area, is the area peaceful?
- b Who wears a crown? Where do they wear it?
- c How can you *honour* a great writer?
- d If your life is full of *sorrow*, how do you feel?
- e Is a *witch* usually good or evil in stories?

After you read

- 10 Answer these questions.
- a Why are the three witches important to the story?
 - b Why does Lady Macbeth wash her hands in her sleep?
 - c Why does Macbeth order Banquo's death?
 - d What is happening when Macbeth says, 'Do not shake your bloody hair at me!'?
 - e Why does Macbeth believe that nobody will kill him?
 - f How does 'Birnam Wood move to Dunsinane'?
- 11 Which named characters die in this story? How do they die?
- 12 Discuss the characters of Macbeth and Lady Macbeth. What are their good and bad qualities? Which of them do you think is most evil?

King Lear

Before you read

- 13 King Lear has three daughters. He decides to share his kingdom between them because he is too old to govern. What do you think will happen next?
- 14 Find these words in your dictionary. Make sentences with them.
- a *trust devil*
 - b *duke traitor*
 - c *bastard earl*
 - d *knight plot kingdom*

After you read

- 15 What are the relationships between these people?
- King Lear is Regan, Goneril and Cordelia's.....The Duke of Albany is Goneril's.....Regan is married to the.....Edmund is Edgar's.....The Earl of Gloucester is their.....
- 16 Discuss how these characters die. Do they deserve to die? Why (not)?
- a Regan
 - b Goneril
 - c Edmund
 - d Cordelia
- 17 Work with other students. Choose a scene from the story and act it out. Explain why you chose that scene.

Writing

- 18 You are making a film of *Romeo and Juliet*. You must advise the actress who is playing Juliet. What do you want her to do when she wakes up in the tomb? Write down your advice. Start like this: *When you wake up, and before you look round, smile happily...*
- 19 Imagine that you are Lady Macbeth. Write a page in your diary describing the murder of Duncan and what happens afterwards.
- 20 Compare the three sisters in *King Lear*. What are their characters like? How do they behave towards their father?

- 21** Choose a main character from one of the stories. Write the story from their experience of it.
- 22** Which of the plays would you like to see at the theatre? Explain why.
- 23** Shakespeare wrote these plays nearly 400 years ago. Why do you think they are still so popular?















These are three of Shakespeare's greatest, and most tragic, plays. In each story, the main characters die - cruel Lord Macbeth, unhappy King Lear and the doomed lovers, Romeo and Juliet. They die because they, or others, are weak, greedy or very foolish. But, like real people, they have good qualities and moments of greatness too.

Penguin Readers are simplified texts designed in association with Longman, the world famous educational publisher, to provide a step-by-step approach to the joys of reading for pleasure. Each book has an introduction and extensive activity material. They are published at seven levels from Easystarts (200 words) to Advanced (3000 words).

Series Editors: Andy Hopkins and Jocelyn Potter

NEW EDITION

	6 Advanced (3000 words)		Contemporary
	5 Upper Intermediate (2300 words)		Classics
	4 Intermediate (1700 words)		Originals
	3 Pre-Intermediate (1200 words)		
	2 Elementary (600 words)		
	1 Beginner (300 words)		British English
	Easystarts (200 words)		American English



Book/cassette pack also published

www.penguinreaders.com

Cover photograph © Donald Cooper

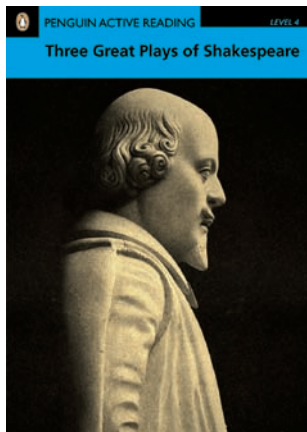


Published and distributed by
Pearson Education Limited



Three Great Plays of Shakespeare

William Shakespeare



Summary

Romeo and Juliet

In the Italian town of Verona, Romeo Montague and Juliet Capulet, the son and daughter of two rival families, fall in love with each other. This will trigger off a chain of events which will lead to the lovers' deaths.

Part I

Romeo sneaks into Lord Capulet's yearly feast to see Rosaline, the girl he loves. There, he meets Juliet, the host's daughter. They fall in love and marry in secret the following day. Later that day, Mercutio, Romeo's friend, is killed by Juliet's cousin, Tybalt. Enraged, Romeo kills Tybalt and is banished from Verona

Part II

To frustrate her parents' plans to marry her to Count Paris, Juliet pretends to be dead by drinking a sleeping potion. Romeo hears the news, returns to Verona and breaks into Juliet's tomb. There, he takes some poison and dies beside Juliet's body. Juliet awakens, sees her dead lover and stabs herself. When both families see the lovers' lifeless bodies they agree to end the feud.

Macbeth

In Scotland, noble Macbeth meets three witches who predict that he will become king. This prediction whets Macbeth's ambition to such an extent that he ends up committing lots of murders that will lead to his downfall and death.

Part I

Returning victorious from battle, Macbeth and Banquo are greeted by three witches who prophesy that Macbeth will be king of Scotland and that Banquo's offspring will reign. When Macbeth's wife hears the news, she plots to

kill King Duncan that night at their castle. The couple succeed and blame Duncan's servants for the murder.

Part II

Once king, Macbeth has Banquo killed, but the murderers fail to kill Banquo's son. Banquo's ghost returns to haunt the king at a feast. In fear, Macbeth again seeks out the witches, who tell him he is almost indestructible. In the meantime, Macbeth kills the family of Macduff, who is raising an army in England with Duncan's son. Macbeth finally meets Macduff in single combat and is slain and Duncan's son becomes Scotland's new king.

King Lear

In Britain, King Lear and the Earl of Gloucester disown the one child who loves them most and protect and benefit the ones whose outward demonstrations of love are motivated by greed. Unfortunately, both become aware of their mistakes too late.

Part I

King Lear decides to divide his realm among his three daughters, according to how much love they profess to him. The two who pretend to love him are granted his kingdom; while the unselfish daughter who loves him best is banished from Britain. Aware later of his wrong decision, Lear is pushed to insanity by his two daughters' cruel behaviour towards him.

Likewise, the Earl of Gloucester is deceived by his bastard son Edmund into believing that his legitimate son, Edgar, is plotting against him. Gloucester promises to make greedy Edmund his heir.

Part II

Lear's banished daughter, Cordelia, is raising an army in France to recover her father's throne. Meanwhile, Edmund and Lear's wicked daughters accuse Gloucester of plotting with Cordelia against them and have his eyes plucked out.

Cordelia's army is defeated; she and her father are taken prisoners. Edmund secretly gives orders to have them killed. In spite of their victory, the selfish sisters and Edmund end up being destroyed by their evil nature and King Lear dies of a broken heart over Cordelia's corpse.

About the author

William Shakespeare is the most famous writer in the English language. He was born in 1564 and died in 1616 in Stratford-upon-Avon, England. In his late twenties, he went to London, where he began to write comedies,



Three Great Plays of Shakespeare

tragedies and historical plays and achieved great fame. His plays appealed to all social classes thanks to his vivid characterizations and his masterly use of the English language. Apart from being a playwright, he was also an actor and a brilliant poet.

The original texts

The plots of Shakespeare's plays were not invented by the playwright; they were adapted by him from stories which were well known in his time.

Romeo and Juliet, *Macbeth* and *King Lear* were written by Shakespeare between 1593 and 1606 to be performed in London theatres and at the English court. They were published for the first time between 1597 and 1623 and have remained popular ever since. Film adaptations of the plays such as Baz Luhrmann's *Romeo+Juliet* (1996) and Roman Polanski's *Macbeth* (1972) have made Shakespeare's plays even more popular.

Background and themes

Themes the three stories have in common

- Love vs. hatred: Can hatred destroy love or is love more powerful?
- Order vs. disorder: Can a ruler's flaws or his weaknesses lead to civil disorder?
- Free will vs. fate: Do we govern the course of our lives or is life governed by external forces?
- Passion vs. reason: Is our reason a better guide than our strong feelings?

Themes in common between *Macbeth* and *King Lear*

- Ambition: To what lengths can we go in our search for power?
- People's potential for evil: How predictable is human behaviour?
- Guilt: How does a guilty conscience affect our well-being?
- Rightful rule vs. tyranny: Compare the protagonist to any tyrant in recent history. What led to his/her downfall?
- Moral blindness: Is it easy to discern between good and bad people?

Discussion activities

Romeo and Juliet (Part I)

Before reading

- Discuss:** Have students talk about Shakespeare and the play.
 - Have students discuss what they know about Shakespeare.

*Who was Shakespeare? Where/when did he live?
What did he write? What language did he write in?
What do you know about Romeo and Juliet?*

- Ask students to bring a map of Europe to place 1 England and Shakespeare's birthplace (Stratford on Avon) and 2 Italy and Verona (the setting of *Romeo and Juliet*).

While reading

- Discuss:** Have students discuss the conventions of marriage in their culture.
*Lord Capulet says to Count Paris that his daughter is 'too young' to get married (page 2). How old do you think she is? Would she be too young to marry in your country today?
Why does Count Paris ask Lord Capulet for his daughter's hand instead of asking Juliet? Is this common in your country?*
- Predict:** Ask students to write down Tybalt's thoughts.
When Lord Capulet tells Tybalt to let Romeo stay at the party, Tybalt gets 'very angry' but obeys his uncle (page 6). What is Tybalt thinking at this moment?
- Discuss:** Have students express their views on these topics:
Was Romeo really in love with Rosaline? Is his love for Juliet real? Do you believe in love at first sight? The nurse and Friar Lawrence don't let the lovers' parents know about the wedding (page 10). Is this right?

After reading

- Write:** Lord Capulet's invitation card
Have students design a card that Lord Capulet can send his relatives and friends to invite them to his yearly feast instead of sending the servant (page 2).
- Role play:** Divide the class into 5 different groups. Each group describes the fight (pages 10–11) from one of the characters' point of view (Romeo, Tybalt's ghost, Mercutio's ghost, Lady Capulet and the Prince).

Romeo and Juliet (Part II)

Before reading

- Guess:** Have students read the words in italics on page 14.
Who says these words, to whom and why?

While reading

- Discuss:** Have student talk about Friar Lawrence. Have students discuss Friar Lawrence's actions.
*If you were Friar Lawrence, would you tell Paris that Juliet is already married? (page 18)
Is Friar Lawrence right or wrong in giving Juliet the drink to make her sleep for 42 hours? Would you drink a liquid of this type? (page 19)*
- Predict:** Ask students to imagine the following situation.
What will happen to Juliet if she wakes up before Romeo comes to fetch her from the tomb?



Three Great Plays of Shakespeare

- 10 Discuss:** Have students discuss the end of the story.
Should Friar Lawrence be punished by the Prince?
Do Romeo and Juliet's deaths have any positive effect?

After reading

- 11 Write:** Ask students to imagine the following.
When Romeo arrives at the Capulets' tomb he gives Balthazar a letter to take to his father (page 22). What does the letter say? Write it down.

Macbeth (Part I)

Before reading

- 12 Guess:** Have students read the words in italics on page 28.
What are the colours red and white connected to? What will the story be about?

While reading

- 13 Discuss:** After reading Banquo's words on the witches on page 28, have students discuss the powers of witches.
Can the witches bring trouble and death? Can they predict the future?
Macbeth and Banquo pay close attention to the witches' words. Would you?
Do people in your country believe in witches?
- 14 Discuss:** Have students discuss this:
According to Lady Macbeth, Macbeth's defects are being 'too kind, too gentle' (page 28). Why does Lady Macbeth consider them defects?
Macbeth thinks he is a brave man. Does Lady Macbeth consider him brave? Why/ why not? (page 30).

After reading

- 15 Role play:** Discuss with students what Banquo would say to his wife after meeting the witches. Then get them to dramatize the dialogue.
- 16 Write and Role play:** And then?
In pairs, get students to imagine King Duncan wakes up when Macbeth is about to kill him. Ask them to write the dialogues and dramatise them.

Macbeth (Part II)

Before reading

- 17 Guess:** Have students read the words in italics on page 36.
Who is talking to Macbeth? Can a human being not be born from a woman?

While reading

- 18 Guess:** Ask students to imagine and then discuss Macbeth's thoughts when Macduff tells him he was not born in the normal way.

After reading

- 19 Write:** Macbeth today
Have students imagine that Macbeth is king today and goes to see a psychologist after seeing Banquo's ghost. Ask them to write down the conversation.

King Lear (Part I)

Before reading

- 20 Guess:** Have students read the words in italics on page 46.
What is the story about? Who is 'I' and who is 'you'?

While reading

- 21 Discuss:** Have students discuss the mistakes King Lear makes (pages 46–47).
Why was it foolish of Lear to:
a *divide his kingdom as he did,*
b *believe what Goneril and Regan told him,*
c *think that Cordelia didn't love him and 4 tell Cordelia she was no longer his daughter?*
- 22 Guess:** Have students discuss the following.
Edgar's situation is similar to Lear's. What will be the result of the friendship between 'Poor Tom' and Lear?

After reading

- 23 Write:** Have students write Edgar's letter to his father explaining what really happened between both brothers (page 52).

King Lear (Part II)

Before reading

- 24 Guess:** Have students read the words in italics on page 58.
What will happen in this part? Why does Lear say that Cordelia has died?

While reading

- 25 Guess:** Ask students to predict what Gloucester is planning to do when he asks to be taken to the edge of a rock high above the sea (page 60). Get them to discuss why he has made this decision.
- 26 Read carefully:** Have students find evidence in the text to discuss the following:
King Lear says to his daughter: 'I know you cannot love me. Your sisters were bad to me. You have a reason to hate me, but they have not.' (page 67)
What's Cordelia's reason for hating her father? Do you agree that Goneril and Regan have no reason to hate him? If so, why are they so cruel to their father?

After reading

- 27 Write:** Regan opens a letter Goneril has sent to Edmund and reads it. (page 62) In pairs, have students imagine what the letter says and then write it down.
- 28 Write:** And then?
Ask students to imagine Cordelia hasn't been killed by Edmund's men. In pairs or in small groups, get them to write new endings to the story.

Vocabulary activities

For the Word list and vocabulary activities, go to www.penguinreaders.com.



Three Great Plays of Shakespeare

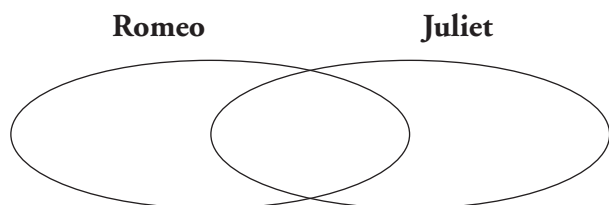
Photocopiable

While reading

Romeo and Juliet (Part I)

- 1 Compare Romeo and Juliet, using the words in the box. Some words may not fit either of them.

cheerful false honest kind cruel
independent loyal romantic sensible
patient



Romeo and Juliet (Part II)

- 2 Romeo has a very bad memory. Put the instructions that Friar Lawrence has given him in the right order.

Steps to follow:

- ☐ Spend your wedding night with Juliet.
- ☐ Leave Verona.
- ☐ Stay until the prince forgives you.
- ☐ Return to Verona.
- ☐ Go to Mantua.
- ☐ Go to Juliet.

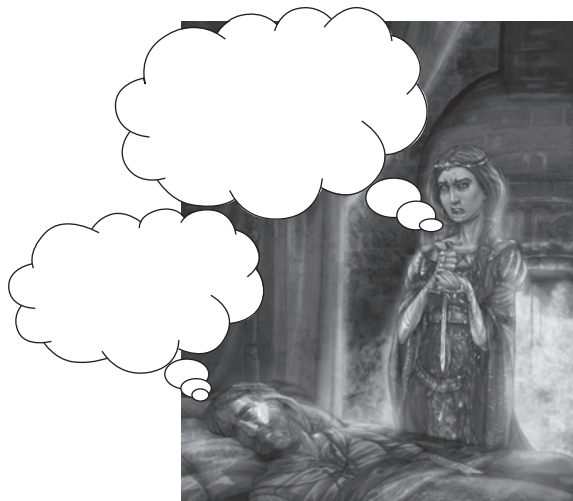
- 3 Match the words on the tombs with the names.

Mercutio Tybalt Paris Lady Montague
Romeo Juliet

- a Here lies, who died out of sadness.
- b Here lies, who died because of the hatred between two families he did not belong to.
- c Here lies, who was murdered by his cousin's husband.
- d Here lies, who killed herself with a dagger.
- e Here lies, who killed himself with poison.
- f Here lies, who died because he was in the wrong place at the wrong time.

Macbeth (Part I)

- 4 Complete the speech bubbles. What is Lady Macbeth thinking? And what is King Duncan dreaming about?



- 5 Who said this? Macbeth or Lady Macbeth?
- a 'I must go into Duncan's room and kill him.'
.....
 - b 'Get some water and wash the blood from your hands.'
.....
 - c 'I cannot go into that room and see the king's body again.'
.....
 - d 'My hands are as red as yours.'
.....
 - e 'All the water in the oceans will not clean the blood from these hands.'
.....

Macbeth (Part II)

- 6 Complete the speech bubbles. What are Macbeth and Lady Macbeth saying? What is the ghost thinking?





Three Great Plays of Shakespeare

Photocopiable

- 7 Compare what the witches promised Macbeth and what finally happened.

What the witches say to Macbeth	What finally happens
'Macbeth! Macbeth! Watch Macduff. Watch him and protect yourself from him.'	
'Macbeth! Be brave! You cannot be hurt by any man who was born from a woman.'	
'Your enemies will never beat you until Birnam Wood moves to Dunsinane Hill.'	

King Lear (Part I)

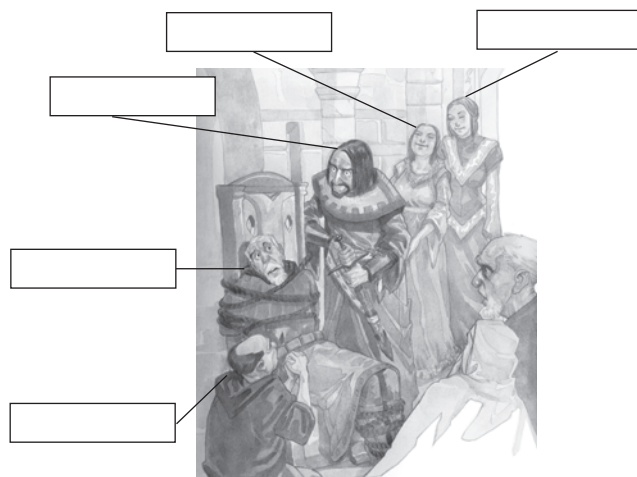
- 8 True (T) or false (F)?
- Edmund and Edgar were brothers.
 - People thought Edgar was more important than Edmund.
 - The Earl of Gloucester loved Edgar more than Edmund.
 - Edmund didn't want his father to see the letter.
 - Edgar wrote the letter.
- 9 Complete the table with information from the first part of the story.

daughter	eldest	second	youngest
name	Goneril		
husband			
words to father	I love you as much as I love my...		
share of the kingdom			

King Lear (Part II)

- 10 Write each character's name next to the picture.

Cornwall Gloucester Goneril servant
Regan



After reading

Romeo and Juliet

- 11 Suppose you are Juliet. Write down your feelings in your diary after your father has informed you that you must marry Count Paris.
- 12 Work with another student. Write a different ending to the story as from the moment Romeo arrives at Juliet's tomb. Then share it with the rest of the class.

Macbeth

- 13 In her sleep, Lady Macbeth gets up from bed, takes some paper, writes on it and then goes to bed. Write down what she writes.

King Lear

- 14 Edgar says he will put mud on his face, wear his hair long and dirty, and put on old clothes so as not to be recognised by his father's men (page 55). Draw what he will look like.
- 15 Work with another student. Find the similarities between King Lear's family and Gloucester's family.

How did the sons and daughters behave towards their fathers and towards each other?

How did the fathers behave towards their children?



Three Great Plays of Shakespeare

Photocopiable

Romeo and Juliet (Part I)

1 Who's who?

Match the names and the right description.

- | | |
|------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1 Romeo | a a friend of Romeo's |
| 2 Juliet | b a young Capulet |
| 3 Benvolio | c Lord Capulet's daughter |
| 4 Tybalt | d the girl that Romeo was in love with |
| 5 Escalus | e Escalus's nephew |
| 6 Rosaline | f the Prince of Verona |
| 7 Paris | g Lord Montague's son |

Romeo and Juliet (Part II)

2 Are these sentences about the end of the story true (T) or false (F)?

- a Romeo broke the Capulet's tomb open.
- b Romeo didn't want to kill Paris.
- c Romeo killed himself with poison.
- d Juliet killed herself with the poison that Romeo brought.
- e Lady Capulet died the previous night.
- f The prince said the deaths were the two families' fault.
- g The Montagues and the Capulets continued fighting.

Macbeth (Part I)

3 Who's who?

Match the names and the right description.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1 Macbeth | |
| 2 Duncan | |
| 3 Banquo | |
| 4 Lady Macbeth | |
| 5 Malcolm and Donalbain | |
| 6 Fleance | |
| a an army leader | |
| b the King of Scotland | |
| c Lord of Glamis | |
| d Banquo's son | |
| e the two sons of the king | |
| f Macbeth's wife | |

Macbeth (Part II)

4 What did they say?

Match the words and the replies.

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Macbeth: 'I have seen Banquo.' | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 Ross: 'Something terrible has happened. Macbeth has killed your wife and all your children.' | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Doctor: 'What is she doing with her hands?' | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 4 Servant: 'The queen is dead, my lord.' | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 Macbeth: 'No man can kill me except one who was not born from a woman.' | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a Lady Macbeth: 'You are looking at an empty chair.' | |
| b Lady: 'She does that very often. She is trying to wash her hands.' | |
| c Macbeth: 'This is not a good time for her to die.' | |
| d Macduff: 'Let me tell you then, I was cut from my mother's body early.' | |
| e Macduff: 'What? All my pretty children? And their mother?' | |

King Lear (Part I)

5 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- a Goneril was married to the Duke of Cornwall.
- b Cordelia was not yet married but the King of Spain hoped to make her his wife.
- c Cordelia lost her father's love because she told her father the truth.
- d Edgar was Gloucester's bastard son and Edmund was his legitimate son from his marriage.
- e King Lear was foolish to trust Goneril and Regan.

King Lear (Part II)

6 Put these events from the end of the story in the right order. Number them, 1-14.

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a Cordelia told Lear who she was. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b Edgar and Edmund fought. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c Edgar found out about Goneril's plan for Edmund to kill Albany. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d Edgar showed Albany Goneril's letter to Edmund. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e Edgar told Albany the whole story. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| f Edgar wounded Goneril's servant. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| g Edmund and the British army won the battle. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| h Edmund died. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| i Goneril killed herself. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| j Goneril poisoned Regan. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| k Goneril's servant gave Edgar her letter before he died. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| l Lear arrived with Cordelia in his arms, killed on Edmund's orders. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| m Lear died. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| n The British soldiers took Lear and Cordelia prisoner. | <input type="checkbox"/> |



Three Great Plays of Shakespeare

Book key

1.1 1 Open answers

- 2 a King Lear b Romeo and Juliet c Macbeth
d Macbeth e Romeo and Juliet e King Lear

1.2 Open answers

2.1 Friar Lawrence: Their love may turn the hatred
between the families into love.

The nurse: she wants Juliet to be happy.

2.2 Possible answer (clockwise):

- a Friar Lawrence
b Lord Capulet
c Juliet
d Tybalt
e Count Paris
f Mercutio
g Romeo
h Lord Montague (Montagues and Capulets need to
be separated by Friar Lawrence, who can sit next
to anyone, and Count Paris, who need only avoid
Romeo.)

- 1 Friar Lawrence
2 Romeo, Count Paris
3 Lord Montague, Romeo, Mercutio
4 Lord Capulet, Juliet, Tybalt
5 Romeo, Juliet

2.3 1 ordered, to stop fighting

- 2 warned, not to make trouble
3 advised, to forget Rosaline
4 allowed, to speak to Juliet.
5 promised not to cause trouble with Romeo that
night

2.4 Open answers

3.1 1 ✓

2 ✓

3 ✗

4 ✓

3.2 a Juliet: I don't love you.

Count Paris: I will make you happy.

b Friar Lawrence: You must be brave.

Juliet: I like your plan.

c Romeo: I don't want to hurt you.

Count Paris: I hate you.

d Prince Escalus: You've been very foolish.

Lords Montague and Capulet: It's all our fault.

3.3 1 She had found a ladder.

2 Romeo had killed Tybalt.

3 Romeo had said goodbye to Juliet.

4 Juliet had drunk the friar's liquid.

5 Romeo had killed himself.

6 The prince had lost two members of his family.

3.4 Open answers

4.1 1 Macbeth, shocked

2 Banquo, dangerous

3 Lady Macbeth, strong

4 Macbeth, wrong

5 Lady Macbeth, guilty

6 Macduff, upset

7 Donalbain, safe

8 Banquo, powerful

4.2 a 1 b 8 c 2 d 4 e 6 f 5 g 3 h 7

4.3 1 truth

2 strength

3 thoughts

4 sorrow

5 invitations

6 hatred

4.4 Open answers

5.1 1 Banquo.

2 a ghost.

3 blood on her hands.

4 Duncan.

5.2 1 Only Macbeth can see the ghost.

2 Lady Macbeth cannot sleep.

3 Macbeth is too busy to worry about his wife's
death.

4 Macbeth fights bravely.

5.3 1 has been walking

2 has been getting

3 has been carrying

4 has been talking

5 has been worrying

6 has been trying

7 has been saying

8 has been hearing

5.4 Open answers

6.1 1 Cordelia, she does not love him enough

2 the King of France, he feels sorry for her

3 Edmund, he will get all his father's land

4 Goneril, she sends away half his knights

5 Regan, she refuses to let any of his knights stay in
her home

6 Poor Tom, he does not want his father to find him

6.2 1 mistake

2 lie

3 ✓

4 mistake



Three Great Plays of Shakespeare

6.3 1 so 2 when 3 Although 4 because

5 until 6 but

6.4 Open answers

Talk about it Open answers

Write about it Open answers

Project Open answers

Discussion activities key

- 1 a Shakespeare was a great playwright, poet and actor.
He was born in England in 1564 and died in 1616.
He wrote plays and poems in English.
Romeo and Juliet are two lovers who kill themselves
because they can't be together.

b Open answers

- 2 In Shakespeare's play, Juliet is almost 13. In this story,
we are not told. Up to the early 20th century it was
common practice in Europe for men to ask parents for
their daughters' hands.

3–9 Open answers

- 10 Draw students' attention to the fact that Romeo and
Juliet's deaths put an end to the conflict between the
two families – or do students believe the fighting will
start again later?

11 Open answers

- 12 Point out that red is connected to blood and passion
and white to purity. Is this so in the students' culture?

- 13 Witches can bring trouble and death by confusing
people. Some seem to have the ability to predict the
future.

- 14 Lady Macbeth thinks that Macbeth's defects are being
too 'kind and too gentle' because these aspects of his
personality may stop him from killing Duncan. Lady
Macbeth doesn't consider Macbeth brave because he is
afraid to kill Duncan.

15–17 Open answers

- 18 Ask students to consider Macbeth's feelings. Is he
afraid? Surprised? What is he going to do? Will he
fight Macduff?

19 Open answers

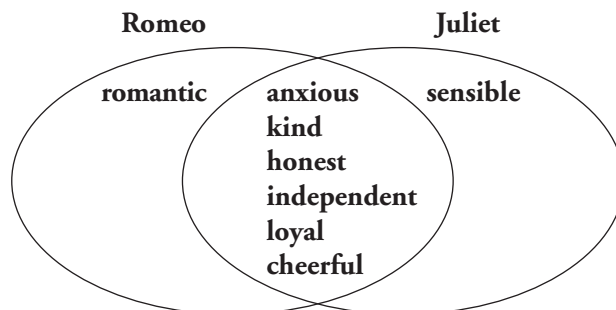
20–25 Open answers

- 26 Cordelia was unfairly disowned. Goneril and Regan
perhaps felt that King Lear had left them all the
responsibilities of the kingdom but still demanded to
be treated as King. However, this may have been an
excuse to justify their ambitious aims.

27–28 Open answers

Activity worksheets key

- 1 Words not included: false – cruel.



- 2 1 Go to Juliet.
2 Spend your wedding night with Juliet.
3 Leave Verona.
4 Go to Mantua.
5 Stay until the prince forgives you.
6 Return to Verona.
- 3 a Lady Montague
b Mercutio
c Tybalt
d Juliet
e Romeo
f Paris
- 4 Lady Macbeth may be thinking how much Duncan
reminds her of her father or that she will not be able to
murder him. King Duncan may be thinking of what
a nice time he has had at Macbeth's castle and how
grateful he is to Macbeth and his wife.
- 5 a Macbeth
b Lady Macbeth
c Macbeth
d Lady Macbeth
e Macbeth
- 6 Macbeth may be saying to Lady Macbeth that Banquo
is sitting at the table with them. Lady Macbeth may be
saying that he is looking at an empty chair. Banquo's
ghost may be thinking that he must frighten Macbeth
until he confesses his crimes.

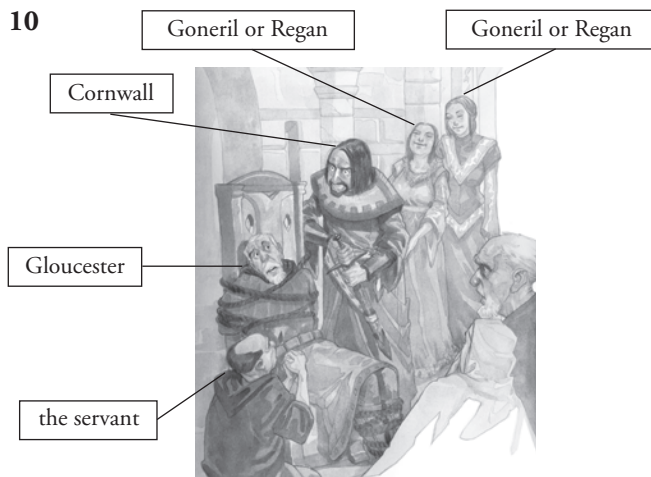


Three Great Plays of Shakespeare

7	What the witches say to Macbeth	What finally happens
	'Macbeth! Macbeth! Watch Macduff. Watch him and protect yourself from him.'	Macduff kills Macbeth.
	'Macbeth! Be brave! You cannot be hurt by any man who was born from a woman.'	Macduff was not born in the normal way and so he can kill him.
	'Your enemies will never beat you until Birnam Wood moves to Dunsinane Hill.'	Birnam Wood moves to Dunsinane because the soldiers carry branches in front of them as they walk.

- 8 a F – they were half-brothers.
b T
c F – he loved them equally at the beginning of the story.
d F – he pretended this but it was not true.
e F – Edmund presumably wrote it.

9	daughter	eldest	second	youngest
	name	Goneril	Regan	Cordelia
	husband	Duke of Albany	Duke of Cornwall	no husband but King of France wants to marry her.
	words to father	'I love you as much as I love my life, my health, my beauty and my honour.'	'My only happiness comes from my love for you.'	'I love you as much as any daughter can love her father.'
	share of the kingdom	half the kingdom	half the kingdom	nothing



11–15 Open answers

Progress test key

- 1 1 g 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 f 6 d 7 e
2 a T
b T
c T
d F – there was none left. She stabbed herself.
e F – Lady Montague did.
f T
g F – they stopped fighting.
3 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 f 5 e 6 d
4 1 a 2 e 3 b 4 c 5 d
5 a F – She was married to the Duke of Albany; Regan was married to the Duke of Cornwall.
b F – It was the King of France who hoped to marry her.
c T
d F – Edgar was his true son from his marriage and Edmund was his bastard son.
e T
6 a 4 b 9 c 3 d 5 e 10 f 1 g 6
h 13 i 11 j 8 k 2 l 12 m 14 n 7



STRANGERS ON A TRAIN

**PATRICIA
HIGHSMITH**

PENGUIN READERS

Strangers on a Train

PATRICIA HIGHSMITH

Level 4

Retold by Michael Nation

Series Editors: Andy Hopkins and Jocelyn Potter

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate, Harlow,
Essex CM20 2JE, England
and Associated Companies throughout the world.

ISBN 0 582 41812 7

Strangers on a Train copyright 1950 by Patricia Highsmith
This adaptation first published by Penguin Books 1995
Published by Addison Wesley Longman Limited and Penguin Books Ltd. 1998
New edition first published 1999

Third impression 2000

Text copyright © Michael Nation 1995
Illustrations copyright © Ian Andrew 1995
All rights reserved

The moral right of the adapter and of the illustrator has been asserted

Typeset by RefineCatch Limited, Bungay, Suffolk
Set in 11/14pt Monotype Bembo
Printed in Spain by Mateu Cromo, S.A. Pinto (Madrid)

*All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored
in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means,
electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the
prior written permission of the Publishers.*

Published by Pearson Education Limited in association with
Penguin Books Ltd., both companies being subsidiaries of Pearson Plc

For a complete list of the titles available in the Penguin Readers series please write to your local
Pearson Education office or to: Marketing Department, Penguin Longman Publishing,
5 Bentinck Street, London W1M 5RN.

Contents

	page
Introduction	iv
Chapter 1 The First Meeting	1
Chapter 2 A Difficult Day with Miriam	7
Chapter 3 Good News for Guy	10
Chapter 4 Bruno Gets Ready	11
Chapter 5 The First Murder	14
Chapter 6 Bruno Did It!	17
Chapter 7 No One to Talk to	19
Chapter 8 Bruno Is Everywhere!	21
Chapter 9 Guy Makes a Decision	26
Chapter 10 The Second Murder	27
Chapter 11 The Detective Begins Work	31
Chapter 12 The Good Man and the Bad Man	33
Chapter 13 The Wedding Day	34
Chapter 14 Guy's Secret Brother	37
Chapter 15 Proof!	39
Chapter 16 Gerard Comes Closer	43
Chapter 17 The Perfect Crime	48
Chapter 18 A Terrible Accident	49
Chapter 19 The End at Last	52
Activities	56

Introduction

'Guy, I just thought. Oh yes! You murder my father and I'll murder Miriam. The police will never find us. We're strangers, we met on a train and nobody knows we're friends. It's perfect.'

Guy Haines meets Charley Bruno on a train and from that moment his life is never the same again. He tries to forget about Bruno's crazy plan for murder. But Guy is slowly pulled deeper and deeper into a world of madness, lies and death. Two murders follow one after the other — and there is no escape . . .

Patricia Highsmith was born in Texas in America in 1921. She lived in England and France, and finally moved to a village in Switzerland. She was an artist as well as a writer, and liked gardening. She never married, and died in February 1995.

From a very early age Highsmith was interested in people who behaved strangely. When she was sixteen, she decided to become a writer. *Strangers on a Train* was her first novel. It appeared in 1950 and is still her best-known book.

Highsmith is one of the best crime writers of this century. She said once that she was 'interested in the effect of guilt' on her heroes. Her books and short stories are about her own special world of fear, anger and murder.

Alfred Hitchcock made a film of *Strangers on a Train* in 1951. He changed the story, but it is still a very exciting and frightening film to watch.

Chapter 1 The First Meeting

The train rushed along angrily. Guy was thinking about Miriam. He saw her round pink face, her cruel mouth . . . he started to hate her.

'Perhaps Miriam doesn't want a divorce,' Guy thought unhappily. 'But she's pregnant and it's not my child, and she must want to marry the father. Why does she want to see me, though? She can get a divorce without that. Perhaps she doesn't want a divorce, only money.'

Miriam sometimes asked him for money and he always sent it because she was good at making trouble and Guy didn't want his mother to be unhappy. In Metcalf, Guy's home town, Miriam pretended that Guy lived in New York so he could succeed as an architect before he sent for her.

Guy thought about his girlfriend Anne and how much he loved her, and about the important job he had in Florida. He felt happy. 'Soon . . .' Guy said to himself. 'Soon . . .' He started to read his book.

After he had read half a page Guy looked up and saw a young man sitting opposite him. The young man was very tall and thin, and he smiled shyly at Guy as if he did not know whether to speak or not. Guy moved in his seat and accidentally touched the young man's foot.

'Sorry,' Guy said.

'That's all right,' the man said. 'Say, where are we? Do you know?'

'Texas.'

The young man took a small bottle of whisky from his pocket and offered it to Guy with a friendly smile. He had a very large head, his face did not look stupid or intelligent, or young or

old. His eyes were red and tired, but his skin was as smooth as a girl's.

'No, thanks,' Guy said.

The young man drank some of the whisky, then he asked, very politely, 'Where are you going?'

'Metcalf.' Guy wanted to read his book.

'Nice town, Metcalf,' the young man said. 'Are you going on business?'

'Er, yes.' Guy turned the page of his book.

'What business?' the young man asked, like a child.

'I'm an architect.'

'That's interesting,' he said. He put his hand forward. 'My name's Bruno, Charles Anthony Bruno.'

Guy shook his hand. 'Guy Haines,' he said.

'Do you live in New York, Guy?' Bruno asked.

'Yes I do.'

'I live on Long Island,' Bruno said. 'I'm going to Santa Fe on holiday.'

Guy wanted to read, or to think, but he could feel this man who wanted to talk all the time looking at him. The train stopped and Guy took a walk outside for some fresh air, but it wasn't fresh, it was hot and thick. He went back to the train for some dinner.

'Hello!' Bruno sat down at Guy's table. 'Look, I've got a private room. Have dinner with me, that'll be nice.'

'No, thanks. I . . .' Guy said.

'Yes!' Bruno said. He stood up quickly. He seemed drunk. He ordered dinner for two in his private room, then he walked away, stepping carefully.

Guy followed him. 'Why not?' he thought. 'He's someone to talk to.'

Bruno's room was very untidy. There were clothes, magazines, cigarettes, chocolates everywhere on the floor and the seats. In the middle of the floor Guy saw four big bottles of whisky in a straight

line. A waiter brought dinner and they started to eat, and to drink the whisky.

'What are you going to build in Metcalf, Guy?' Bruno asked, his mouth full of food.

'Nothing,' Guy said. 'My mother lives in Metcalf, it's my home.'

Bruno stopped eating. 'Do you like your mother, Guy?'

'Yes.'

'Your father, too?'

'He's dead,' Guy said.

'Oh. Yeah, I like my mother, too,' Bruno said. 'She's coming to Santa Fe. We do everything together.' Bruno stopped suddenly. 'Do you think that's strange?'

'No,' Guy said.

'Mother gives me money,' Bruno said. He lit a cigarette and drank more whisky. 'Father never gives me anything. He's rich, too!' Bruno shouted. 'I want my own money!'

Then Bruno laughed. 'Father would like you, Guy. You're good and quiet, and you've got a good job, too. Me? I don't want to work. Why should I? I don't feel like it.' Bruno laughed again. 'Father wants me to go into his business. Like Hell I will!' Bruno pushed his cigarette into the dish of butter next to his plate. 'He never gives me money — I know he doesn't like me. I don't like him. You know, Guy, sometimes, I could kill him.'

Bruno looked at Guy. 'Did you ever want to murder someone, Guy?'

Guy wasn't listening, he was thinking about Anne and Miriam and Florida. It was all mixed up in his head.

'Tell me about you, Guy,' Bruno asked. 'What kind of things do you build?'

'What?' Guy tried to think. 'Oh, houses, offices . . .'

'Are you married, Guy?'

'No. Yes. Er, well, I'm separated. I left three years ago,' Guy said. He didn't want to tell Bruno these things.

'Oh? Why is that, Guy?'

'I think we were too young

'Do you love her?' Bruno's eyes weren't tired now. They were bright and looked straight at Guy. 'You take love seriously, don't you, Guy?'

Guy didn't answer this.

'What kind of girl is your wife?' Bruno asked.

'She's pretty, red hair, a little fat,' Guy said. 'We're going to get a divorce,' he said.

'Why? Why now? Why not before?' Bruno's eyes were very bright.

'She's pregnant,' Guy said. He didn't like saying it.

'Oh, boy!' Bruno said. 'I hate women like that, don't you?'

'Well, no . . . I,' Guy said. 'It happens.'

Bruno pulled the cigarette in and out of the butter. 'Men go to women like her like flies go to rubbish,' he said. 'What's her name?'

'Miriam, Miriam Joyce.' Guy tried to change the subject. 'Well, Bruno,' he said. 'If you don't want to work, what do you want to do?'

'I think a man needs to try everything once. You know, everything — travel, and women, and, uh, robbery . . . and murder.' He stopped and looked at Guy with a worried face. 'Did you ever want to kill someone, Guy?'

'No.' Guy was starting to feel drunk.

Bruno picked up another bottle of whisky and tried to open it. 'You know, Guy, the police don't catch most murderers.' He was very drunk and the top of the bottle flew off. Whisky went all over the floor.

'Really?' Guy said.

'No, they don't.' Bruno drank from the bottle. 'Come to Santa Fe with me, Guy! I like you!'



'You know, Guy, the police don't catch most murderers.' He was very drunk and the top of the bottle flew off.

'I can't,' Guy said 'After Metcalf, I have to go to Florida. I'm going to build a sports club there.'

'Oh, Guy!' Bruno looked at him the way a little boy looks at his father. 'That's great. You must be very good.'

Guy smiled, 'Well, thanks

'But,' Bruno said, 'if Miriam makes trouble now — about the divorce - if she came to Florida, Guy, well, you could lose the job, couldn't you?'

Guy thought, 'That's the kind of thing Miriam would do.'

'You could murder her for that, couldn't you, Guy?'

'No,' he said.

'I could make a plan for murdering your wife, Guy,' Bruno said. 'You might want to use it some time.'

'No!'

'Oh, Guy!' Bruno stood up suddenly and waved the bottle about. 'Oh!' he shouted. 'Guy! I just thought. Oh, yes! You murder my father and I'll murder Miriam. The police will never find us. We're strangers, we met on a train and nobody knows we're friends. It's perfect.'

Now the room was a little Hell. It was very hot, Bruno's face was red and his mouth was wide open, shouting, shouting.

'No, no!' Guy said. He ran out of the room, then he opened one of the windows and breathed in the cold night air.

'Guy?' Bruno stood behind him and put his hand on Guy's back. 'I'm sorry.' Guy pulled away from him. 'Oh, please, Guy.' He was like a dog.

'It's all right,' Guy said. 'Let's forget it.'

'O K, thanks.' Bruno smiled. 'Do you want another drink?'

'No, I'm going to bed,' Guy said.

Before he went to sleep Guy remembered that his book was still in Bruno's room. He didn't go back for it. He never wanted to see Bruno again.

Chapter 2 A Difficult Day with Miriam

When he got to Metcalf Guy phoned Miriam and they met outside their old school. It was a hot day and Miriam wore a big white hat. Her face looked fatter than Guy remembered and there were little lines under her eyes.

'Hello, Guy,' Miriam said and smiled, but shut her little mouth quickly to hide her bad front teeth. She looked soft and sticky.

'Hello, Miriam,' he said. 'How are you? When will the child come?'

'January,' she said.

'She's two months' pregnant,' Guy thought. He said, 'You must want to marry him . . . the man?'

'You see,' she said, 'it's a bit difficult.'

'Difficult?'

'He's married, Guy.' Miriam was looking in front of her, speaking as if he wasn't there.

'But we can still get divorced,' he said.

'Owen can't get divorced until September, that's four months,' Miriam told him.

'We could get divorced now,' Guy said.

'Could we wait?' she asked. 'I think I'd like to go away for a few months.'

'What do you mean?'

'Your mother told me about your job in Florida,' Miriam said with her little smile. She looked up at Guy with her dead eyes. 'I want to come with you, and stay until December.'

'No,' he said. 'You can't do that.'

'If you don't take me with you, I'll come alone,' she said.

'Then I won't take the job.'

'You won't do that,' she said in a hard voice. 'The job's too important.'



He tried to talk to her. 'Is there anything we can do about this, Miriam?' he asked.

She loved arguing so Guy decided to be very calm.

'Yes, Miriam, I will,' he said.

'Go on then,' she said. 'Run away from everything.'

He tried to talk to her. 'Is there anything we can do about this, Miriam?' he asked.

'I've said what I want.'



When Guy got back to his mother's house he found a letter from Anne:

What's happened? Write immediately, or phone. I want to be with you. Why don't you come to Mexico for a few days? Oh Guy, I'll miss you when you're away in Florida, but I'm so proud of you. Mum and Dad are, too. I know everything will be all right soon.

*All my love,
Anne*

After he read Anne's letter, Guy wrote to Mr Brillhart at the sports' club in Florida and said he could not take the job.

He spent the next day with his mother. That night someone rang him on the phone.

'Hallo,' a man's voice said. 'It's Charley.' He sounded drunk.

'Charley who?' Guy asked.

'Bruno! Charley Bruno!'

'Oh,' Guy said, 'Hello.'

'I've got your book, Guy,' Bruno said. 'Do you want me to send it to you?'

'Yes.'

'Oh, I know,' Bruno said. 'Come to Santa Fe and see me. Come now.'

'I can't,' Guy said.

'Okay. What about in Florida?' Bruno asked. 'I'll come and see you there. We'll have a great time.'

'No,' Guy said. 'That's all finished.'

'Why?' Bruno asked. Then his voice changed. 'Your wife, huh? I know, she wanted to go to Florida with you.'

This surprised Guy. How did Bruno know these things so quickly?

'You can still get a divorce, can't you, Guy?' Bruno asked. 'Guy? . . . Guy?'

'Look, I have to go,' Guy said.

'Guy, if you want me to do anything, you know, do anything, all you have to do is say.' Bruno's voice was thick and slow with whisky now.

Guy remembered Bruno's plan. He said angrily, 'I don't want anything from you. Understand?'

'Oh, Guy!' Bruno started to cry.

Guy put the phone down.

Chapter 3 Good News for Guy

Guy was walking with Anne in Mexico City. In her long white dress and with her yellow hair she seemed to be made of gold.

'But did you have to refuse the job in Florida because of Miriam?' Anne asked.

'Yes. I hate her,' Guy said.

'Guy, you shouldn't hate people,' Anne said. 'You're talking like a child.'

He felt ashamed of what he said. Anne frightened him when she spoke like this. She seemed so far away from him. She was calm and rich and clever and happy. Guy was not used to this. Sometimes,

when he was unhappy, Guy thought he was the only problem in Anne's life.

They walked some more then Anne went back to the Ritz Hotel where she was staying with her parents. Guy went to his hotel. It was an ugly place, but Guy liked it.

The next morning Guy got a telegram from his mother:

Miriam lost her baby yesterday. She's very sad and wants to see you. Can you come home? Mama.

The first thing Guy did was to send a telegram to Mr Brillhart to ask if he could have the job again, then he rushed over to the Ritz to see Anne. They had a drink in the bar at the hotel.

'Are you going to Metcalf, Guy?' Anne asked.

'Not now, I'm too happy,' he told her.

'Do you think Miriam will follow you to Florida?'

Guy laughed. 'By this time next week,' he said, 'Miriam will be nothing to me.'

Chapter 4 Bruno Gets Ready

Bruno sat in his mother's room at the Hotel La Fonda in Sante Fe and watched her put cream on her face.

'Charley,' she said, 'you won't do anything stupid when I'm in California, will you?'

'No, Ma,' Bruno said. He felt sick and his hands were shaking, but the idea was growing stronger and stronger: 'I must kill Miriam soon,' he thought, 'in the next few days or it'll be too late. Guy's in Mexico, Mother's going to California tomorrow, nobody in Metcalf knows me. If Miriam died now, Guy could get the Florida job back.'

'I need some money for tomorrow,' Bruno's mother said. 'I hope your father sends some soon.'

'That's all he's good for,' Bruno said. 'We don't need him.'

She put her hand against his cheek. 'My dear,' she said, 'I'll miss you.'

Bruno watched his mother walk into the bathroom. She had great legs; he really liked them.

He started thinking about the murder again. It would be perfect, a pure, clean act. He wanted to enjoy it. Perhaps Guy didn't want to kill his father, but that wasn't important now. Guy might do it when Miriam was dead.

Suddenly Bruno felt very unhappy. He could never tell his mother. ('Hey, Ma, I murdered this man's wife and then he killed Father. It was my idea, too. Aren't I clever? We're both free now!') No, he could never tell anyone, except Guy.



Bruno tried to remember what day it was. Sunday, that was it. The time was 8.10 in the morning. He had plenty of time to get to Metcalf. He still felt drunk after last night and he wanted a clear head. He read the notes where he had written everything he knew about Miriam. He got out of bed slowly and walked very carefully around the room. There was one way to get better.

'I need a drink,' he said.

Outside the railway station Bruno went into a bar and bought a small bottle of whisky.

'Bruno!' a man called. It was Wilson and his friends. They were drunk, too.

'Hi, Wilson,' Bruno said. 'I can't talk. I have to catch a train.'

'Where are you going?' Wilson asked.

'Tulsa. I'm going to Tulsa. I've got some friends . . .'

Wilson wasn't listening. 'This is Joe,' he said. 'And this is. . .'



*She put her hand against his cheek. 'My dear,' she said,
'I'll miss you.'*

'I've got to go,' Bruno said. 'Bye!'

Bruno got on the train quickly. Did they know where he was going? No, they couldn't. The train started towards Metcalf and Bruno fell asleep before he could plan Miriam's murder.

Chapter 5 The First Murder

When he woke up Bruno felt better. His mind was clear, he felt happy and he was hungry. After a good dinner he read the notes about Miriam. What did she look like? She had red hair, was a little fat, and she was pregnant.

'The dirty little . . .' Bruno thought. He hated her. Guy would be happy without an animal like that in his life. Everything was so good. 'I have a friend, and my life has a real purpose,' Bruno thought. 'I'd do anything for Guy.'

When the train arrived at Metcalf station Bruno looked for Miriam's address in the telephone book. Miriam's family name was Joyce and she lived with her parents. There were seven people called Joyce in the book, one was a Mrs M.Joyce. Perhaps that was Miriam's mother, and she was called Miriam, too?

Bruno took a taxi to the address, 1253 Magnolia Street, and arrived at nine o'clock. It looked poor and ugly, the kind of place where Miriam would live. Bruno waited by a tree near the house. After a long time two men and a woman came out. The woman had red hair and a square, big body. One of the men had red hair, too. Her brother? They got in a car and drove away.

Bruno ran fast for a taxi. He never ran and it made him ill.

He found a taxi and got in. 'Go! Go!' he shouted at the driver. He could see the car in front of them. 'Right! Turn right now!'

'Where are you going?' the driver asked. 'Perhaps I know the place.'

'Shut your mouth and drive!' Bruno screamed.

The driver was annoyed and shook his head, but he followed the car. Eventually the car stopped in front of a big sign with lights. It said, LAKE METCALF'S LAND OF ENTERTAINMENT. There were music and lights and people laughing — an amusement park. Bruno smiled; this was perfect.

He followed the woman and her friends through the park. Was she really Miriam? She was quite fat, and her hair was red. Bruno noticed that she wore red socks with red shoes. Ugly! But this woman wasn't pregnant.

Then one of the men said, 'Miriam, do you want some ice-cream?'

'Oooh,yes,' she said.

It was her.

'You've got ten minutes to live and you're pushing ice-cream into your mouth,' Bruno thought. 'PIG!'

Miriam and her friends ran off laughing. They went on lots of different rides, they went round and round, and up and down. Miriam held her brother's hand, and then the other man's hand. She kissed him. Bruno hated her soft, fat face, and her stupid laugh. And what was she kissing these men for?

They all took a boat to an island in the middle of the Lake Metcalf, and Bruno followed in another boat. The island was dark and quiet, there were a lot of trees. People came here to kiss and make love. Why were the three of them here?

'Let's sit down,' one of the men said. 'I'll look for a place down here.' The other man went with him.

It was dark and Bruno saw Miriam's shadow alone against the water. Bruno moved quietly, and he was there next to her.

'Hello,' he whispered, 'Isn't your name Miriam?'

She turned. 'Yeah. Who're -?'

His hands closed round Miriam's throat and he pressed tighter



Miriam was silent and Bruno took his hands away. He ran down to his boat and went back over the water to the park.

and tighter. She couldn't scream. Bruno pushed her backwards and she fell over his leg to the ground. He pressed his hands into her throat more and more. Her skin was very hot. Her head turned from side to side, her lips opened and her teeth came forward. 'Ssssssss,' she said. 'Ssssss.' Her throat was very fat. Bruno pressed her into the earth. She was very hot. It was like killing a hot little rat. He took his hands from her throat. Suddenly Miriam coughed, and Bruno jumped on her again and pressed and pressed her throat. He wanted her to die!

Miriam was silent and Bruno took his hands away. He ran down to his boat and went back over the water to the park.

'Help! Help!' Bruno heard the men shouting. 'My God, she's dead. Help!'

Bruno walked slowly out of the park. He needed a drink and went into a place that looked like a bar.

'Whisky,' he said.

'We don't sell drink here, son,' the man said.

'But I need a drink!' Bruno shouted.

'I don't have any whisky,' the man said. 'Coffee?'

Bruno left and ran to the station. He suddenly knew what he really wanted: a woman. He wanted a woman. He was very excited. He asked a taxi-driver where to go. The man wrote an address on one of his cards. Bruno ran off and the taxi-driver watched him until he turned a corner.

Chapter 6 Bruno Did It!

Guy sat back against his bed in the hotel and watched Anne turn over his drawings of their house. He kissed her hair and then her face.

'I want it to be a big house,' Anne said.

'Yes,' Guy said. He had the job in Florida again, which would

bring him a lot of money, and then there would be more valuable jobs. He was very happy.

'Are you hungry?' Anne asked. 'Let's order some food.'

As they ate, the phone rang.

'Guy?' It was his mother.

'Hello, Mama,' he said.

'Guy,' she said. 'It's about Miriam. She's dead, Guy. Murdered, last night. . . ' She started to cry.

Guy put the phone down and told Anne about Miriam. He started to pack his suitcase while Anne ordered his plane ticket.

'Guy? Are you all right?' Anne asked.

Guy was staring at his drawings, but there were no houses on the paper, they were all drawings of Bruno's smiling face with his red, tired eyes.



'What if Bruno did it?' Guy thought on the plane. He tried to remember every word they had said. 'Did I tell him to do it?'

At Metcalf the police asked him some questions and then Guy went home to his mother. He found a letter waiting for him. Inside was a card from a Metcalf taxi company and on the other side, some writing: NICE TOWN METCALF.

'That doesn't mean anything,' Guy told himself. 'It could be anyone. Lots of people come to Metcalf

At the inquest a lawyer asked Guy about Miriam.

'You wanted her dead, didn't you?' the lawyer said. 'You arranged her murder. You thought she wouldn't give you a divorce, and you didn't want her to go to Florida. Isn't that true?'

'Yes, but I didn't want her dead,' Guy said. He looked at Miriam's boyfriend, Owen Markham. He was a dark, good-looking man who looked at Guy with large brown eyes.

In the end the inquest decided that some unknown person had murdered Miriam.

The next day a telegram from Bruno arrived: ALL GOOD WISHES FROM THE GOLDEN WEST.

'It's from Anne's parents,' Guy told his mother. 'It's nothing - nothing.'

A few days later Guy went to Florida to start his new job. Every day he worked he felt good, he knew he was doing the right thing. The sports club would be a perfect building.

One evening in August he got a letter from Bruno:

I phoned your mother for your address, hut she didn't give it to me. Look, Guy, don't worry. I'm going to be very careful. Write to me soon.

Your friend, Charley Bruno

Then Guy knew. Bruno did it, Bruno did it; he could not stop thinking those words, Bruno did it. His life was different now, his job, his mother, Anne, everything was different now.

When Guy spoke to his mother on the phone he said, 'Uh, do you remember that man who phoned you for my address? It was a friend, Phil Johnson. He works in Chicago, and he wanted to see me. Isn't that nice? Don't worry about it.'

Chapter 7 No One to Talk to

'Charley, who're all these people?'

Bruno's mother looked at the stories about Miriam's murder and the photographs of Guy that Bruno had cut out of the newspapers.

'I met Guy Haines on a train,' Bruno said. He liked saying Guy's name, and he wanted to talk about the murder. 'Someone murdered his wife.'

'Who did it?' she asked.

'They don't know. It's a very difficult murder, a clever one, I

think,' Bruno said. 'You know, Ma, Guy was the nicest man I ever met, but his wife was a —'

'Charley!' his mother said. 'You're in your grandmother's house and she doesn't like bad language.' She looked at the glass of whisky in his hand. 'Oh, Charley, you haven't had breakfast yet.'

'Whisky's good for me, Ma.'

'Don't drink too much,' she said. 'Come out later. You're in California and the sun is out. It's a beautiful day.'

But the whisky wasn't good for him. Every morning he had a pain in his chest and he couldn't breathe. When his mother left, Bruno thought about the murder. He felt so powerful — he took away life, like God! He wanted to tell everyone about the murder, about his one great act. Most people, ordinary, common people, never had one great thing in their lives.

'The newspapers,' he thought. 'I could tell them all about murder. I could teach them!'

Bruno really wanted to talk to Guy about the murder, but he did not dare to phone or write to him yet. But he had to talk to Guy soon, he wanted his father dead quickly, and he wanted Guy to do it.

Bruno's grandmother walked into the room.

'Have breakfast with me, my dear,' she said. 'Then I want to go out. A film, perhaps, a good one with a murder in it, or an amusement park?'

'An amusement park,' Bruno said with a smile. 'I like them.'

When they got back to the house in the afternoon there was a letter for Bruno:

Dear Charles

I don't understand your letter. I don't know you very well so please don't phone or write to me or my mother again.

Guy Haines

Bruno felt the terrible pain in his chest that he got in the mornings, and then he started to cry.

Chapter 8 Bruno Is Everywhere!

A few months later, in December, Guy sat in his office in New York. He was not getting any offers of jobs and he felt that his guilt about Miriam's murder kept people away from him. A man needed to be pure inside to draw plans for a good building, and Guy felt dirty.

He was making drawings of the house for him and Anne to live in after their wedding when the telephone rang.

'Hello, Guy, it's Bruno.'

Guy said nothing and put the phone down, but it rang again.

'I want to see you, Guy,' Bruno said.

'No,' Guy said and put the phone down.

That night he and Anne came out of his flat and Bruno was standing there in the dark. Guy held Anne's hand and tried to keep calm.

'Hello, Guy,' Bruno said softly. He looked at Anne with great interest, as if he was surprised to see Guy with a woman.

'We must go, we must go,' Guy said and walked away quickly, with Anne's hand still in his.

'Oh Guy, I just want to . . .' Bruno said.

'Who was that?' Anne asked.

'A man I know. He wants a job,' Guy said. 'It's nothing.'

'What does Bruno want?' Guy thought. 'What does he want?' The question did not go away, and Guy could not stop thinking.





'What does Bruno want?' Guy thought. The question did not go away, and Guy could not stop thinking.

One morning in January Bruno appeared next to Guy in the street and said, 'Have a drink with me, Guy.'

'No.'

'Yes,' Bruno said. 'What're you frightened of?'

'Nothing,' Guy said. 'Do I seem frightened?' ('Get the police!' Guy thought. 'The police, now!' But he couldn't.)

'Then have a drink with me,' Bruno said.

Guy agreed to go to a bar.

'Why didn't you tell me about Anne?' Bruno asked. 'That woman I see you with. I know all about her.'

'This is our last meeting,' Guy said. 'I'm going to tell the police about you.'

'Why didn't you do that last year?' Bruno smiled. 'I'll tell them you paid me to kill Miriam, tell them you went to Mexico so I could do it alone. They'll believe me, Guy.'

Guy knew this was true. He said, 'I have to go.'

'Wait,' Bruno said. 'You're going to kill my father.'

Guy looked into Bruno's eyes. They were the eyes of a mad child. Guy felt helpless, he could do nothing.

'I'll go to the police if you don't kill him!' Bruno said, then he left the bar suddenly.



Over the next two weeks Guy saw Bruno standing outside his office every evening when he left. Then the first letter came. It was a map of Bruno's house with a written plan for the murder. Guy threw it away, but the letters came every two or three days. The twenty-first letter said: 'Do you want me to tell Anne about your part in Miriam's murder? You must kill my father soon, before the middle of March.' Then Bruno sent a big gun. Everything seemed like part of a bad play or film.

Guy looked at his own gun. He had bought it when he was

fifteen, because it was small and beautiful and perfect. He held the gun gently, and he smiled and thought about when he was a boy.

Guy spent the next day with Anne in the country, and they went to look at their house.

'It'll be finished by March,' Guy said.

'That's good,' Anne said. 'There'll be two months before we get married to buy things for it.'

'Do you know what . . . ?' Guy began to say, then he stopped and looked at Anne from the sides of his eyes. He wanted to tell her about Bruno's letters and the gun, but he couldn't. He didn't want any secrets from Anne, but here was the biggest secret of all. Suddenly Guy realized that his life was separating into two parts, a life with Anne — and a life with Bruno.

They went back to Anne's house and before dinner Guy took a walk in the garden. He saw the black shape of a man — it was Bruno! Guy hit him hard and they both fell to the ground, but Bruno was very strong, and his hands went towards Guy's throat. Guy wanted to kill him. He pushed Bruno into the grass, fighting hard.

Suddenly Bruno said, 'Guy, you knew it was me!'

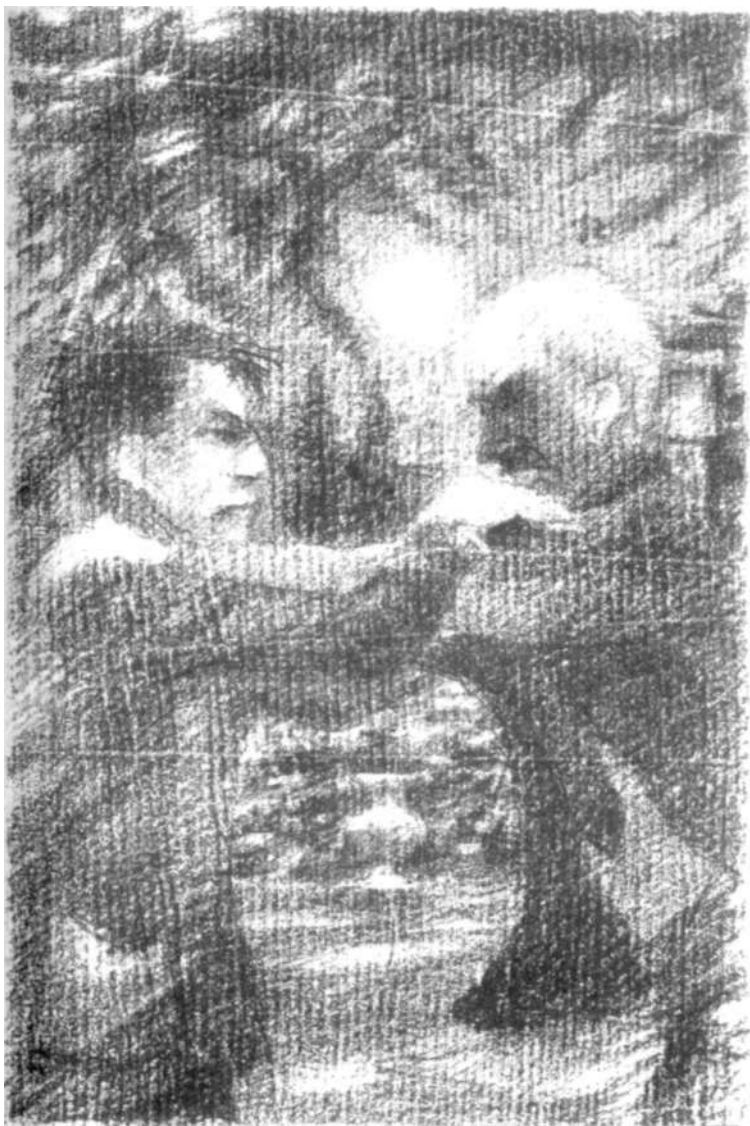
'I'll kill you the next time I find you here!' Guy shouted.

'Oh, Guy! Kill me if you want to!' Bruno said laughing, 'but are you ready to kill my father?'

'I'm ready to call the police,' Guy said.

'And I'm ready to tell Anne about you and Miriam, and then to tell the police!' There was a red light in Bruno's eyes; he looked like a hungry animal. 'I'll write to Anne tonight, Guy, unless you tell me you're going to murder my father!' He turned and ran away.

Now Guy was frightened. He waited for Bruno's letter to Anne to arrive. He knew he couldn't stop it. What could he say to her about the murder? He did want Miriam dead, he didn't stop



*'Oh, Guy! Kill me if you want to!' Bruno said laughing,
'but are you ready to kill my father?'*

Bruno killing her. He was guilty, too, and his guilt was growing stronger.

A few days later Anne phoned Guy. Her voice was shaking and Guy knew what had happened.

'I've had a letter, Guy,' she said.

'Oh?' He tried to be calm. 'A letter?'

'There's no name on the letter, Guy,' she said. 'It says you knew about Miriam's murder.'

'I don't understand, Anne,' he said. 'I don't know . . .'

'Guy, I won't tell anyone,' Anne said. 'But what's happening?'

'Nothing's happening, Anne,' Guy said, and thought his voice sounded strange. 'Can I see you tonight? We'll talk about it.'

'No. I can't,' Anne said.

Guy felt he was losing her, and that Bruno was everywhere. Then Guy realized something more: he had started lying to Anne.

Chapter 9 Guy Makes a Decision

The next day at work Guy had a call from Douglas Frear of the Shaw Company. He had sent the company some drawings for a building, and he wanted them to give him a job.

'Mr Haines,' Mr Frear said, 'I've had a letter — there's no name on it — and it says that you knew about your wife's murder and that the police want to speak to you.' He waited for Guy to speak. 'Mr Haines, I wanted to tell you about the letter. Are the police still asking questions?'

'No, Mr Frear, and I don't know who sent the letter,' Guy said. 'I don't know what it means.' Then he asked, 'Mr Frear, about the job . . .?'

'I'm sorry, Mr Haines, we gave that to another architect,' Mr Frear said quickly.

Guy went out for a drink. He was very worried. 'If I murder Bruno's father,' he thought, 'all of this will stop. No! I mustn't think that. But what can I do? What's the way out of this?' Guy drank some more and then went home. He slept heavily.

Early in the morning Guy woke up and felt someone in the room. He saw the orange end of a cigarette burning in the dark. He knew who it was and what he wanted.

'Bruno?' Guy said.

'You're ready now, aren't you, Guy?' Bruno said softly.

'Yes,' Guy said, and immediately felt better.

'Mother and I are going away tomorrow,' Bruno said. 'Do it tomorrow night. I broke the back door, so you can get in easily. Here's a key, too.' Bruno gave Guy some gloves. 'You'll need these.' His voice shook, 'Oh, Guy, I'll never see you again.'

Chapter 10 The Second Murder

Guy took the train for Great Neck that night. He had the gloves and his own small gun in his pocket. Bruno's gun was too big. It was raining when Guy got off the train at Great Neck. There was the bus, like Bruno had said in all his letters. Guy remembered all of it. At Grant Street he got off the bus and started to walk. There was the tree and the street light, and there was the white wall of Bruno's house. Guy felt like an actor in a play he'd already done hundreds of times.

Guy walked fifteen steps along the white wall, then he put up his hands and jumped on to the top of the wall. He looked down and saw the wooden box. There were no lights on in the house. Guy jumped down on to the box, landed without a sound, and ran across the grass towards the back door. He went up the six white steps near

the back of the house and opened the back door — he didn't need the key.

The kitchen was dark. Guy walked across it and then went towards the back stairs that the servants used. Bruno had told him not to use the house stairs because they all made a noise. But Guy had to be careful here, too. He missed step three, step four and step seven on the back stairs because they made a noise.

Outside the door to one of the servants' bedrooms the floor made a noise, and at the same time Guy heard a clock - it was midnight. He stopped. The servant was on the other side of the door. The noise of the clock went on and on — could the servant hear? Now he remembered, Bruno had said, ' . . . between eleven and midnight.' Was this why?

Guy felt very hot. Slowly, he opened the door into the part of the house where the family lived.

'I've been here before,' Guy thought. 'I've done all this before. I know everything about this house.' Again he felt like an actor in a play who did the same thing night after night. None of it was real.

Guy closed the stair-door quietly. And there, just there, very near, was another door - and behind that door was Guy's father. He walked quietly towards the door, and slowly opened it with his left hand. He held his gun in his right hand.

The bedroom was dark, but some light came through the window. It was only half open! Bruno said his father always had the window fully open.

'Because of the rain,' Guy thought. 'But how will I get out?'

Now Guy could see Bruno's father in his bed, sleeping quietly. There was the round, dark shape of his head.

'Ha-ha-ha-a!' came through the window.

Guy shook with fear. A woman was laughing somewhere outside.

'This man, this man is alive,' Guy thought. 'He could laugh,



*Now Guy could see Bruno's father in his bed, sleeping quietly.
There was the round, dark shape of his head.*

too, he could . . . No, don't think. Don't think. Do it now! Do it!

He fired the gun. Nothing happened. It was all a dream, all a play, nothing was real! Guy fired again. Nothing . . . He breathed slowly and fired again. The room tore with a screaming sound. He fired a fourth time and the screaming sound came again, as if the world had burst.

'Kagh!' said the man in the bed, and his head moved.

Then Guy was running across the grass, but he didn't remember how he had got there. He ran like a man in a bad dream who runs and runs but cannot move.

'You!' A man's voice shouted behind him. It was the servant.

Guy stood in the shadow by the white wall.

'You!' the servant shouted again. Guy's hand shot out and hit him on the chin and the man fell to the ground.

Guy jumped over the wall, but it was very dark and he didn't know where he was. He tried to be calm, then he heard a police car very near him. The blue light moved over him for a few seconds.

'Where am I?' Guy thought. 'I can't remember . . . Where must I go?'

The blue light burned his eyes. He turned and ran away, then some trees caught him. The branches scratched his face and he pushed them away with his hands, but there were hundreds of them. He couldn't see, he couldn't think. He felt his own blood warm on his face and throat.

Finally, Guy got out of the trees and saw a road and the lights of a town. He walked slowly along the road. He still had his gun, but his gloves were torn to pieces. They were probably in the trees behind him. He was too tired to go back and look. He wanted to walk and never stop.



The next day Guy looked at his face in the mirror. It was covered in scratches, and so were his hands. His body was heavy and tired. He thought he could never sleep enough in his life.

Guy read the papers. All the stories about the murder said the murderer was a big, tall man, nothing like himself. But it said the bullets were very small and Guy knew he had to throw away his gun. While he was reading, the doorbell rang.

'Hello, Guy. Guy! How did . . .?' It was Anne. 'Oh, Guy, what happened to your face? Your hands!'

'A fight. It was nothing,' he said. 'In a bar, a . . . Anne?'

Anne didn't say anything for a few seconds. 'But Guy, that letter, the fight you had in my garden that night, and now this . . . What's happening?'

He felt frightened, then he started to cry and couldn't stop. Anne put her hand on his shoulder, but she didn't try to hold him.

'If I tell her the truth,' Guy thought, 'she'll never touch me again.'

Chapter 11 The Detective Begins Work

Bruno sat and looked at Arthur Gerard, his father's private detective, and thought how ugly he was. Gerard had a fat pink face and little eyes, and he wore a dirty suit.

'I'll work on this murder for nothing, Charley,' Gerard said. 'I liked your father. I also think this is all very interesting.'

'I don't care what you think,' Bruno said.

'You hated your father, didn't you?' Gerard asked.

'He hated me.'

'Tell me about Thursday night again,' Gerard said.

'I left Mother about 2.45 in the morning, I went to get a hamburger, then I went to a bar, Clarke's,' Bruno said.

'Nobody saw you at Clarke's,' Gerard said.

'It was a different bar, then!' Bruno said.

'Okay, I want to know who you spoke to,' Gerard said. 'You see, I think it's strange that your father died on the night of the day you left. I think you spoke to someone, and they knew you were going away.'

'I said I don't care what you think,' Bruno said.

Gerard smiled. 'All right Charley. You can go now,' he said.

Bruno left Gerard's office angrily, but then he thought about Guy. Gerard was too stupid to find out about him.

'Guy and me,' Bruno thought, 'we're like gods.'

The next day Gerard came to see Bruno and his mother.

Bruno was sitting in the garden. 'Anything new?' he asked Gerard.

'We found these,' Gerard said, and showed Bruno some small pieces of the purple gloves. He looked across the grass. 'The murderer ran over there,' Gerard said, 'then he got caught in the branches of the trees on the other side of the wall. These pieces were there.'

'Really?' Bruno tried to sound interested.

'He knew where to go, too. The whole thing was planned, the box next to the wall, the broken back door . . .' Gerard didn't finish. 'I'll see your mother now.'

Bruno watched Gerard's fat body walk slowly across the grass. He tried not to think about Gerard, but the man seemed to be everywhere, and a few minutes later he followed Gerard into the house.

'Do you think Charley knew about the murder?' Bruno heard his mother ask.

'Yes, I think so, Elsie,' Gerard said. 'Don't you?'

'I'll certainly tell you everything he tells me, Arthur,' she said.

His own mother! What if she remembered all the stories about Guy from the paper? Suddenly Bruno felt alone. He

wanted to sleep more than anything, but he needed more and more whisky for that, and he woke up earlier and earlier in the morning.

Chapter 12 The Good Man and the Bad Man

Guy had thrown away the big gun, the purple gloves, all the clothes he wore on that night, and his shoes, but he did not throw away his own little gun. He cleaned his flat again and again, especially at night because he only slept for two or three hours now. If he did not clean the flat, he tried to work. He had a job to plan a hospital, but how could he do that with so much guilt in him, with so much murder? He was not taking any money for the job.

How could he kiss his mother again? How could he talk to his friends? There was only Anne now. He still loved her, but his love for her made him two different people. The good man who loved Anne and built hospitals, and the bad man who murdered old men and helped to murder his wife.

The new house was ready, and one Sunday Guy and Anne and her parents went to see it.

'I hear there are lots of ducks and birds here. We could eat some,' Anne's father said. 'Are you good with a gun, Guy?'

They all looked round the house. It was only a month until the wedding now.

'We'll sit here every night as husband and wife,' Guy thought. 'How can I do that, when I know the things I've done?'

'Guy,' Anne said, 'Are you all right?'

'Yes,' he said, and laughed too loud.

'I think you're working too hard, you know,' Anne said.

Anne and her mother started to make dinner and her father made some drinks for all of them.

'What am I doing with these people?' Guy thought. 'They are so good, and I'm so bad. I'm not part of their family, but if I try hard to live with them, that other man inside me, the bad one, will go away. He must!'

After dinner Guy and Anne walked together in the garden. It was almost dark.

'I'm going to get a job with a company of architects in New York, Anne,' Guy said.

'But you have the hospital to do, Guy,' she said. 'That'll take you a year. Is it because you won't take any money for the hospital job?'

'Partly,' Guy said. 'But I just feel like it.'

'I know what the problem is,' Anne said.

'Do you, Anne?' Guy asked. 'Do you?' For a minute he wanted her to know everything.

'It's Miriam, isn't it?' Anne said. 'You've changed so much since she died.'

'No, no, I . . .'

'Do you want us to marry, Guy?' she asked.

He couldn't answer her. He almost didn't know how to speak to her honestly now.

Anne took his hand. 'I think,' she said. 'You need me a lot just now, and I need you a lot.'

Guy looked into her eyes and thought, 'If I can do this, if I can keep this all, the other man inside me will go away.'

Chapter 13 The Wedding Day

On the day of his wedding Guy was waiting in the church with his friend, Bob Treacher, for Anne to arrive.

'Did you bring any whisky, Bob?' Guy asked. 'I need a drink.'

bottle with a smile.

Guy opened the bottle and put it on a table. After a few seconds he picked it up and threw it against the wall. Broken glass and whisky spread all over the floor. Guy stood with his back to Bob.

'I'm very sorry, Bob,' he said.

'It's all right, Guy,' he said. 'You're nervous.'

'No, I'm not nervous,' Guy thought. 'When are they going to stop this wedding? When are they all going to know about me? This is worse than the murder. I'm lying to Anne, but only she can save me.'

Guy could not stop the wedding. It was like the murder of Bruno's father. Guy felt he was an actor in a bad play, doing something he had done thousands of times before. At the party afterwards Guy suddenly saw Bruno's face smiling madly. Then it disappeared.

'Congratulations, Guy!' People were all shouting at the same time. 'Good luck, Guy and Anne.' The noise got louder and louder. 'Good luck! Good luck! GUY AND ANNE!'

'Good luck, Guy. I really want you and Anne to be happy, as happy as I am.' And there was that soft voice and that weak face with the mad red eyes in it and Bruno's hand was on Guy's shoulder and he was looking at Anne.

'Go away,' Guy whispered. 'You mustn't come here!'

'Are you a relation of Teddy Faulkner?' Bruno asked Anne. He shook her hand.

'He's my cousin,' Anne said.

'We play tennis sometimes,' Bruno said.

'Are you a friend of Guy's?' Anne asked.

Bruno laughed. 'Friend! I'm only his oldest friend in the world. We went to school together.' He put his arm round Guy's shoulder. 'Didn't we, Guy?'



'Friend! I'm only his oldest friend in the world. We went to school together.' Bruno put his arm round Guy's shoulder.

'You never told me about that man, Guy,' Anne said later.

'We didn't really go to school together, Anne,' Guy said quickly. 'I — I met him at the Parker Institute ... it was last December.'

'Can't you see?' Guy thought as he looked at all the people in the room who were speaking to Bruno. 'Can't you see he's mad?'

Chapter 14 Guy's Secret Brother

Guy took a job with the company Horton, Horton and Keese, Architects. They gave him a big shop to build. It was easy to do, nothing special — anyone could do it.

He and Anne had their first party at the house soon after their wedding.

'Bruno's coming to the party,' Anne told Guy.

'Why?' Guy said. 'He isn't my friend.'

Bruno was drunk when he arrived. He looked at Anne all the time.

'I like your dress, Anne,' he said. Bruno always noticed women's clothes. 'Now, where will you go for your first holiday? Italy? You know, Anne, Guy and I always talked about travelling.'

Guy took Bruno to the corner of the room. 'Get out now,' he said. 'Or I'll kill you.'

'Is that a promise, Guy?' Bruno laughed. 'You know, Guy, I think Anne is very beautiful. I like it here.'

An hour later he fell behind the sofa, completely drunk, and went to sleep.

'He can stay the night,' Anne said.

'Where did you find him, Guy?' a man asked. 'They won't let him into our club anymore.'

A few days later Bruno sent flowers to Anne to say sorry for being so drunk at the party.

'Aren't they nice?' she said to Guy. 'I think Bruno's interesting.'

Horton, Horton, and Keese liked Guy's drawings for the shop. Guy hated them; this was the kind of ordinary work he didn't want to do. He wanted to leave the company, although they wanted him to do more work. But there was something much worse than this. A normal man could build a bad shop or a good hospital, but Guy wasn't normal. Sometimes he looked in a mirror and saw the other man who was inside him, the murderer, his secret brother.

The telephone rang and Guy's secretary picked it up.

'A man wants to speak to you, Mr Haines,' she said.

'Hello, Guy,' Bruno said. 'Come to lunch.'

Guy couldn't argue with Bruno in front of the secretary and he agreed to meet Bruno at a restaurant ten minutes later. Bruno had four expensive ties which he showed Guy.

'They're for you, Guy,' he said. 'Do you like them?' He was like a lover. 'Anne spoke to me on the phone this morning,' Bruno said. 'She told me you're both going on a trip. She's a great woman, Guy. You must be very happy.' For a moment Bruno wanted to hold Guy's hand, like a brother.

'Yes, I am,' Guy said. 'Very lucky.'

'What does Anne like doing, Guy?' Bruno asked. 'Does she like me?'

'You've never loved a woman, have you?' Guy said. 'You don't know what love is, do you?'

Bruno looked at the table. 'No,' he said.

'You give me ties,' Guy said, 'but you could give me to the police in the same way.'

'Oh, Guy!' Bruno started crying.

'I have to go!' Guy said. He jumped up and ran out of the restaurant.

'Why do people do this to me?' Bruno thought. 'Why? Why?'



'How do you know Guy Haines's wife?' Gerard asked Bruno. He had all Bruno's bills, and he had seen the one for the flowers Bruno sent to Anne.

'I'm a friend of her husband,' Bruno said. 'Mother and I were thinking of building a house. He's an architect.'

'Why did you send Mrs Haines flowers?' Gerard asked. 'You must know them very well.'

'No. I went to a party there and I had a good time.'

'Let's talk about all these men you know,' Gerard said. 'Matt Levine, Mark Lev, you saw a lot of them before the murder.'

'Yeah, and Mark killed his own father, too,' Bruno said.

'Ernie Schroeder?' Gerard asked. 'Charley, please!'

Bruno tried to think of something to say.

Chapter 15 Proof!

Guy went on a sailing holiday with Anne on her boat, the *India*. They were away from home for three weeks. Guy was happy and calm. He looked at the clear sky and the blue sea, and the sea made him think of the bridge he wanted to build, a long white bridge like a pair of wings. He wanted to be a great architect. Guy saw Anne looking at him with love in her eyes, and he felt all the bad times were gone.

A few days later the phone rang at his home.

'Hello, Mr Haines,' a man said, 'this is Arthur Gerard. I'm a detective. Could I come to talk to you, at your house, please? Now.'

Guy had to say yes, and Gerard came over quickly. 'Do you know Charles Bruno, Mr Haines?' he asked.

'Yes, I know him.'

Gerard said, 'His father was murdered in March

'I didn't know that!' Anne said, and looked at Guy in surprise.

'Neither did I,' Guy said quickly. 'Murdered?'

'When and where did you meet Charles Bruno, Mr Haines?'

Gerard asked.

'At - at the Parker Institute last December,' Guy said. He only said it because he had told Anne that at the wedding when she asked him about Bruno. Why hadn't he and Bruno planned a story?

'When did you see Mr Bruno again?' Gerard asked.

'At my wedding in June,' Guy said.

'And he came to a party in July, didn't he, Mrs Haines?' Gerard asked Anne.

'Yes,' she answered.

'Do you like him?' Gerard asked, smiling.

Anne looked at his smile; she didn't like it. 'Well enough,' she said finally.

Gerard asked them a few more questions and then he left.

'Does Gerard think Bruno murdered his father?' Anne asked Guy later.

'He probably thinks it's one of Bruno's friends,' Guy said. ('But it was me, Anne, it was me,' he thought.)

'You never know what people are really doing, do you?' Anne said, shaking her head in surprise.

Later in the day Bruno came to the house.

'You're drunk,' Guy said. 'Get out.'

'Perhaps we should get a taxi for you,' Anne said.

Bruno fell against Guy. He was saying the same thing again and again: 'I'll tell her - I'll tell her - I'll. . .'

'What?' Anne asked Guy. 'What's he saying?'

'Nothing,' Guy said. 'I'll put him to bed.'

Guy pulled Bruno out of the room and took him to a

bedroom. Bruno slept for several hours, and when he woke up Guy was with him.

'Bruno, listen to me, did you tell Gerard we met in December? At the Parker Institute?' Guy asked.

. 'Yeah, I said that,' Bruno said. 'Can I have a drink? Look, Gerard thinks this friend of mine, Matt Levine, murdered my father. He's already killed two or three men.'

'I won't let another man take the blame for the murder,' Guy said.

'He won't get the blame,' Bruno said. 'Gerard won't find anything about Matt Levine, or us. There's no proof'

'Will you go now?'

'No,' Bruno said quietly. 'I want to be with you and Anne.'

And Guy knew that he hated Bruno, but liked him at the same time.

'You know, Guy, I like you, but you're in more trouble than me,' Bruno said. 'Our servant saw you that night, Anne saw those scratches on your face, and there's the gun, the gloves . . . the police could ask you some very difficult questions. But what have they got about me and Miriam, Guy? Tell me, Guy, what have they got?'



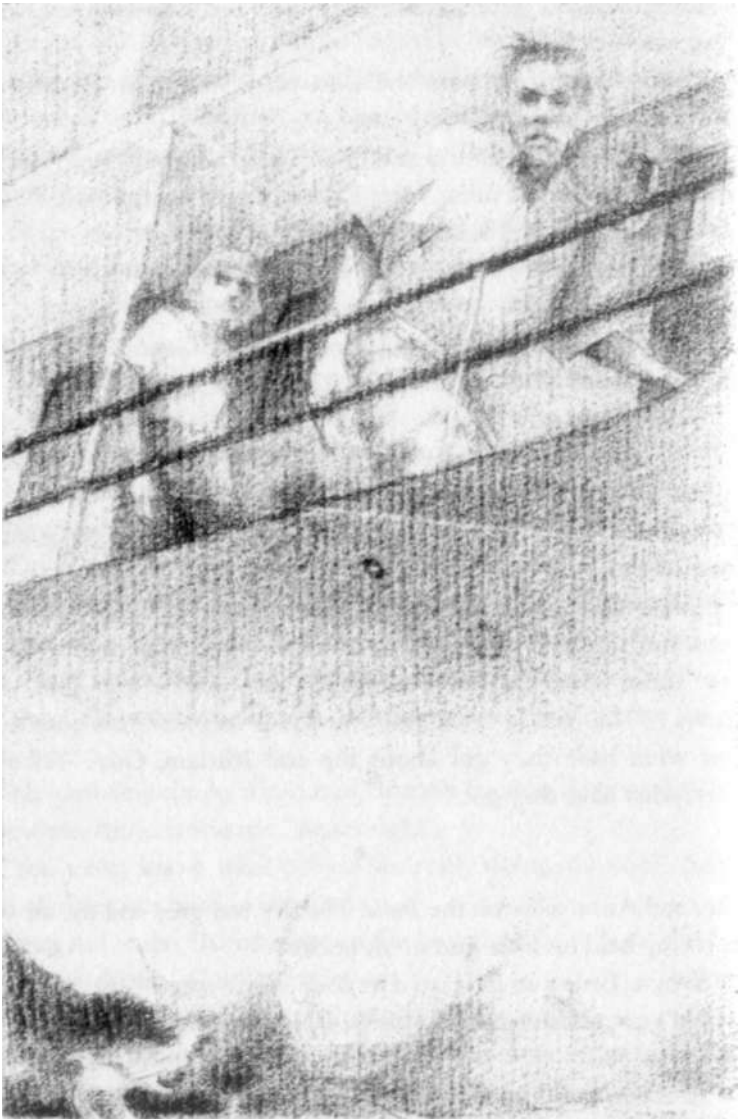
Guy and Anne were on the *India*. The sky was grey and the air was hot. Guy held his little gun in his pocket.

'Why is Bruno so interested in you?' Anne asked Guy.

'He's got nothing to do,' Guy said. His hand tightened round the gun.

'And you met him at the Institute?' she asked.

'Yes.' Guy looked into the water. 'Why is she asking all these questions?' he thought. 'She knows something is wrong. She knows I'm lying, but she doesn't know about what.'



Guy heard Anne walk away. He quickly took his gun out of his pocket and dropped it into the sea.

Guy heard Anne walk away. He quickly took his gun out of his pocket and dropped it into the sea.

'What was that?' Anne was standing behind him.

He could think of nothing to say to her.

Chapter 16 Gerald Comes Closer

'Ma, I don't feel good.' Bruno was in his mother's bedroom. He walked very slowly into her bathroom and got the bottle of whisky he had hidden there, but he dropped it on the floor. He couldn't control his hands.

'Charley?' his mother said and looked worried.

'I can't breathe, Ma!' He tore his clothes off. 'Oh God!'

'I'll get a doctor,' his mother said.

'No! They'll take me away!' He screamed, 'Look at my hands, Ma!' His middle fingers were bent tightly inside his hand. He couldn't stop it. He couldn't move them. 'Look, Ma!'

'Charley!' his mother shouted.

Bruno fell to the floor. He couldn't speak normally, 'Dome . . . Massom tehme . . . Ummm, Massom — Aaaagh!'

Then a doctor came and gave Bruno some medicine and he went to sleep.

'The drink is killing him,' the doctor told Bruno's mother. 'He must stop.'

Bruno woke up later and saw Gerard standing near the bed.

'I'm sorry to wake you,' Gerard said with his stupid smile, 'but I found something. Remember this?' He threw Guy's book on to the bed.

'I remember,' Bruno said.

'I got this book at the Hotel La Fonda. It's Haines's book. You met him eighteen months ago on the train to Santa Fe, didn't you?' Gerard said.

'No,' Bruno said. 'I found the book on the train, that's all. I wanted to send it to Guy but I lost it. I met him in December.'

'So you made calls to Metcalf eighteen months ago and you didn't even know Mr Haines?' Gerard asked. 'I found the phone bills.'

'Yeah, I phoned about the book!' Bruno said angrily.

'And you called before the murder, but you didn't call after,' Gerard said. 'Why not?'

'I don't know!' Bruno shouted. 'I'm tired of murder!'

'Oh, I believe that,' Gerard said. 'I believe that.'

A few moments later Guy had a phone call from Bruno in his office.

'Gerard knows about the book and the phone calls I made to Metcalf,' Bruno said very quietly, as if someone was listening. 'But I told him the calls were about the book and we met in December. All right?'

'All right,' Guy said and put the phone down. Gerard was coming closer and closer, but he couldn't stop it. He looked at the letter lying next to the phone. It was from his friend, Bob Treacher, in Canada:

I have an important job in Alberta. I want you to build a bridge for me as soon as possible. Write now.

Bob



'Nobody knows who murdered Guy Haines's first wife, Miriam,' Gerard said to Bruno in his office.

'I know,' Bruno said.

'Did you talk to Guy about Miriam? You're interested in murder,' Gerard said.

'I didn't talk to him about it,' Bruno said.

'Do you think he planned it?' Gerard asked.

'No, I don't!' Bruno said angrily. 'You obviously don't know the type of man Guy Haines is. He's a great architect.'



*'You obviously don't know the type of man Guy Haines is. He's
a great architect.'*

Gerard suddenly called out, 'Come in, please, Mr Haines.' He saw Bruno jump with surprise as Guy walked into the room.

'Did you and Charles ever talk about your wife's murder, Mr Haines?' Gerard asked.

'No,' Guy said.

'Did he ever tell you he wanted to murder his father?' Gerard asked. He had that slow, stupid smile on his face.

'No,' Guy said.

Gerard held up Guy's book. 'Charles found this on the train, but you didn't meet on the train, did you?'

'No,' Guy said.

'The waiter who brought dinner to the two of you in Charles's room on the train says you did, Mr Haines,' Gerard said, looking into Guy's eyes all the time.

Guy felt hot with shame. He couldn't speak.

'So what?' Bruno said angrily.

'So why are you both lying?' Gerard asked. 'Your wife was murdered, Mr Haines, a few days after you two met. And your father was murdered a few months later, Charles. Did you plan something?'

'We planned nothing,' Guy said.

'Did Charles tell you he wanted his father dead, Mr Haines? Perhaps you were frightened to tell me about it?' Gerard asked.

'No,' Guy said. He felt himself going deeper and deeper into his own lies. And when would Gerard find out the truth? Did he know it already?

Bruno and Guy left the office together.

'You know,' Bruno said. 'He's looking for other people. Gerard doesn't think we did it. We had no reason to do it, did we?'



Gerard went to see Anne at home late one autumn afternoon.

'I think,' he said, 'that Charles Bruno told your husband about this plan to murder his father, and your husband didn't want to talk about it. Then, if your husband knew Miriam might die, too, they had a kind of secret, didn't they?'

'Guy couldn't do a thing like that,' Anne said.

'Do you think they met in March when Charles's father died, and you don't know about it?' Gerard asked.

'It's possible,' Anne said, but she didn't know why she said it. 'When was that fight?' she thought. 'February, March? And was it with Bruno? That was it. Guy tried to stop Bruno killing his father.'

'How was your husband in March, Mrs Haines?' Gerard asked.

'He was nervous,' she said. 'It was a difficult time. His work . . . ' She stopped speaking.

Gerard looked at her, then he smiled and said, 'Call me if you think of anything you know, Mrs Haines,' and left quietly.

A few minutes later Anne saw Gerard outside the house, sitting in his car and writing notes.

'Why did I say that about March? Is he writing about that?' she thought.

'Gerard was here,' Anne said that night as soon as Guy came home. 'He wanted to know about March, if you knew Bruno had planned his father's murder for that month.'

Guy poured a glass of whisky, then he heard himself saying, 'Look, Anne, Bruno told me on the train that he wanted his father dead. I'm not going to say anything because the police can use that to hang an innocent men.'

Anne said gently, 'Yes, what you're doing is right.' And she smiled. 'It's terrible, isn't it, murder?'

Guy hated his lies. He felt empty inside. He thought he was worse than Bruno, who was honestly bad. Even if he was never caught, he couldn't live with Anne like this.

Chapter 17 The Perfect Crime

Gerard smiled happily at Chief of Police Phil Dowland, and said, 'Can't you guess?'

'About Samuel Bruno's murder?' Dowland asked. 'You think his son, Charles, did it, don't you?' He didn't like Gerard because he was a private detective and he didn't work by police rules.

'No.' Gerard's smile grew wider. 'But I think he did another murder. Do you know Guy Haines?'

'Yes,' Dowland said. 'His wife was murdered last June.'

'Guy Haines and Charles Bruno met on a train to Santa Fe ten days before Miriam Haines died,' Gerard said.

'You think Bruno killed her?' Dowland asked. 'You've got no proof.'

'Yes, I have,' Gerard said happily. 'I've spoken to a friend of Bruno's, Edward Wilson, who saw him going to the railway station in Santa Fe on the day of Miriam's murder, a taxi-driver in Metcalf who drove Bruno to the amusement park the very night Miriam Haines died, and a man he tried to buy whisky from, near the amusement park - and another taxi driver who saw him, too. And I've got bills of phone calls Bruno made to Metcalf.'

'But why did Bruno murder this woman?' Dowland said, laughing. 'Because he met her husband on a train?'

'No,' Gerard said. 'You don't see, do you? It was a plan, Bruno wanted Guy to kill his father, and he did

'Guy Haines!' Dowland shouted. 'Oh, this is. . .'

'Yes, Guy Haines,' Gerard said. 'He didn't want to, but he had to after Bruno murdered his wife. Guy was frightened. It was all Bruno's idea, the perfect crime. There was no reason for Guy and Bruno to murder these two people. They thought the police could never find them.'

'What happens now?' Dowland asked.

'I'm going on holiday,' Gerard said. 'I want to check some more details about Guy Haines. I can wait a few weeks.'

Chapter 18 A Terrible Accident

Guy was living in Canada and building his bridge. He came home one weekend and saw a mess in the house only one person could make.

'Bruno was here,' he said.

'Yes,' Anne said.

'You know he's mad, don't you?' Guy said. Anne didn't answer and Guy looked at her carefully.

Anne thought, 'I know he's the one who wrote that letter to me in March, and the one you had a fight with. I know there's something

Then she said, 'Guy, I'm going to have a baby. Are you pleased?'

'A baby!' Guy said, and he laughed with happiness.



The next day Bob Treacher came from Canada to stay with Guy and Anne. It was a sunny day, and the police had called to say that they had no more questions for Guy and Bruno about his father's murder. Anne was pregnant, he had a good job, he felt his life was changing and all the bad things were in the past.

The phone rang and Anne answered. 'Oh, hello,' she said. 'Yes, come with us. We'll meet you by the boat.' She said to Guy, 'That was Bruno, he's coming with us on the *India* today.'

And suddenly Guy felt everything seemed black again. It always came back.

They stopped for a friend of Anne's, Helen Heyburn, on the way to the boat, and Bruno was waiting for them when they arrived.

Bruno was very excited. 'Come on, Guy,' he shouted. 'This is a great day! We've won!'

'Won what?' Anne asked and Guy went cold inside. He looked at Bruno.

'Have a drink,' said Bruno, offering Anne his bottle of whisky.

'No, thank you,' she said.

'Come on, everybody!' Bruno shouted. 'Let's go!'

The boat moved quickly over the grey sea, and the wind was quite strong. Bruno ran about the boat.

'Sit down,' Bob said.

'Who are you?' Bruno asked drunkenly. 'A friend of Guy's?'

'Yes,' Bob said politely.

'I've known Guy all his life!' Bruno shouted. 'Have you?'

Guy saw Anne look at him with surprise. Every time with Bruno something bad happened.

'When will he say it?' Guy thought. 'The truth? He could say anything, do anything. For the rest of my life . . .'

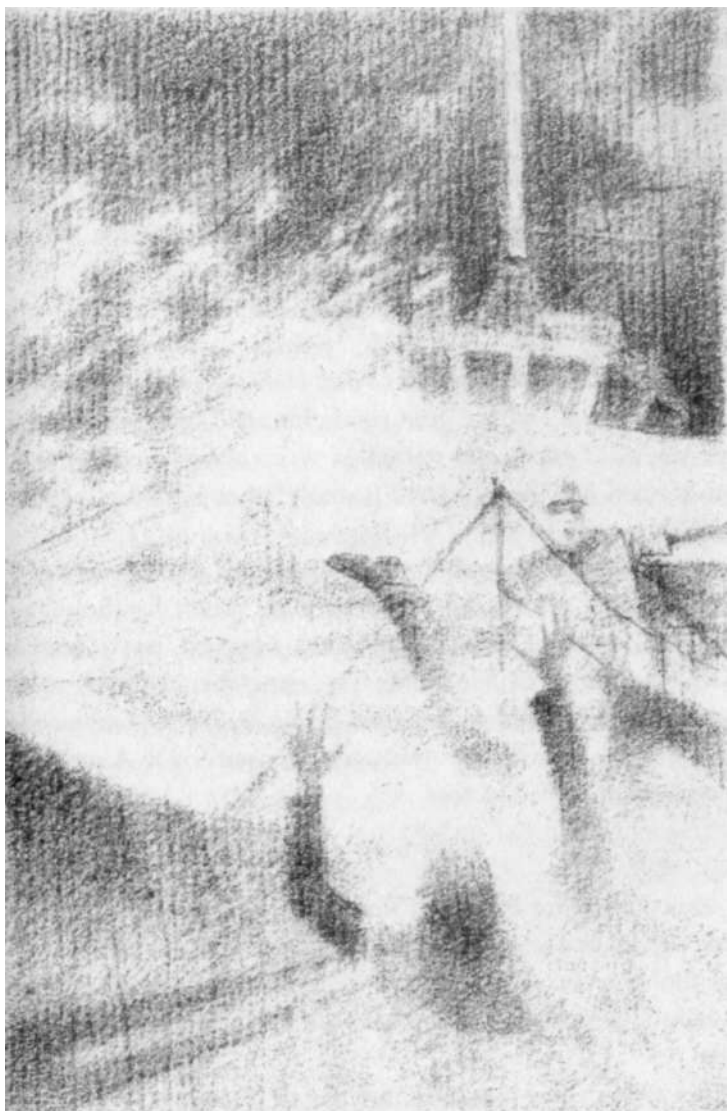
'Come on, let's sing!' Bruno said. 'Guy, sing with me!'

'Oh, sit down,' Helen said to Bruno.

'Yes, sit down,' Guy said. 'And keep quiet!'

Bruno started to cry. They didn't want him. He tried to walk away from all of them, even Guy. Suddenly a large wave came up and hit the boat hard. The wave covered Bruno and with a scream he fell into the sea.

'Bruno!' Guy shouted. He jumped into the sea. It was very cold and the waves seemed to be as high as mountains. He saw Bruno's head very far away.



Suddenly a large wave came up and hit the boat hard. The wave covered Bruno and with a scream he fell into the sea.

'Guy!' Bruno called once — a dying man.

Guy swam towards the place where he had seen Bruno, then he dived down into the cold grey water. The sea turned him round and round and round. There was nothing, Guy could see nothing. He was the loneliest man in the world. Where was his friend, his brother?

Chapter 19 The End at Last

Early one morning Guy got out of bed. He was very lonely without Bruno. He carried all the guilt inside himself now. He picked up some pieces of paper and started to write about everything, the train, Miriam, how he murdered Bruno's father. He left it for Anne to read.

'Anne is good,' Guy thought. 'The rest of us, Bruno, me, his father, Miriam, Gerard, all of us are bad.' Then he thought of Miriam's boyfriend, Owen Markham. He had loved Miriam, he was the father of her child. Guy remembered Owen at the inquest, where he seemed calm and gentle. Suddenly, Guy needed to talk to Owen. It was important, and after writing to Anne, it was the next thing he had to do.



He took a plane for Houston, Texas, where Owen Markham now lived. Gerard had come back from holiday after Bruno died and Guy thought Gerard might follow him to Houston. He looked carefully at the other passengers on the plane, but Gerard was not there.

After asking some questions in different places in Houston, Guy found Owen in a bar.

'I need to talk to you,' Guy said. 'I've got a room at the Rice Hotel. Please.'

Owen looked at Guy with his calm brown eyes for a long time, then he said, 'All right.'

In the hotel room they drank whisky. 'Like the first time with Bruno,' Guy thought.

'I know the man who killed Miriam,' Guy said. 'I didn't stop him. I'm sorry, I know you loved Miriam.'

'No, I didn't,' Owen said, and drank some whisky. He spoke slowly. 'And I didn't want that child. She did that to make me marry her.'

It was all wrong, Owen didn't care. But Guy had to continue.

'You must listen to me,' Guy said. 'You must understand. This man, Miriam's murderer — his name was Bruno — he made me do a murder, too. His father. You see, we met on a train and Bruno said we should do the murders and the police would never catch us. He hated his father, Owen, it was frightening. I said I had some problems with Miriam but I wanted to divorce her. I said no to her murder, but then he killed Miriam, and I only knew after he had done it. You understand, I said no. But after her murder, Bruno phoned me again and again and wrote letters, telling me to murder his father. I was frightened he would tell my girlfriend that I knew about Miriam's murder. And I was tired of it all, so tired, so I said yes, and I agreed to kill his father. I only wanted Bruno to go away, that's all. I had to do it. Owen, I'm guilty, too. Do you hate me?'

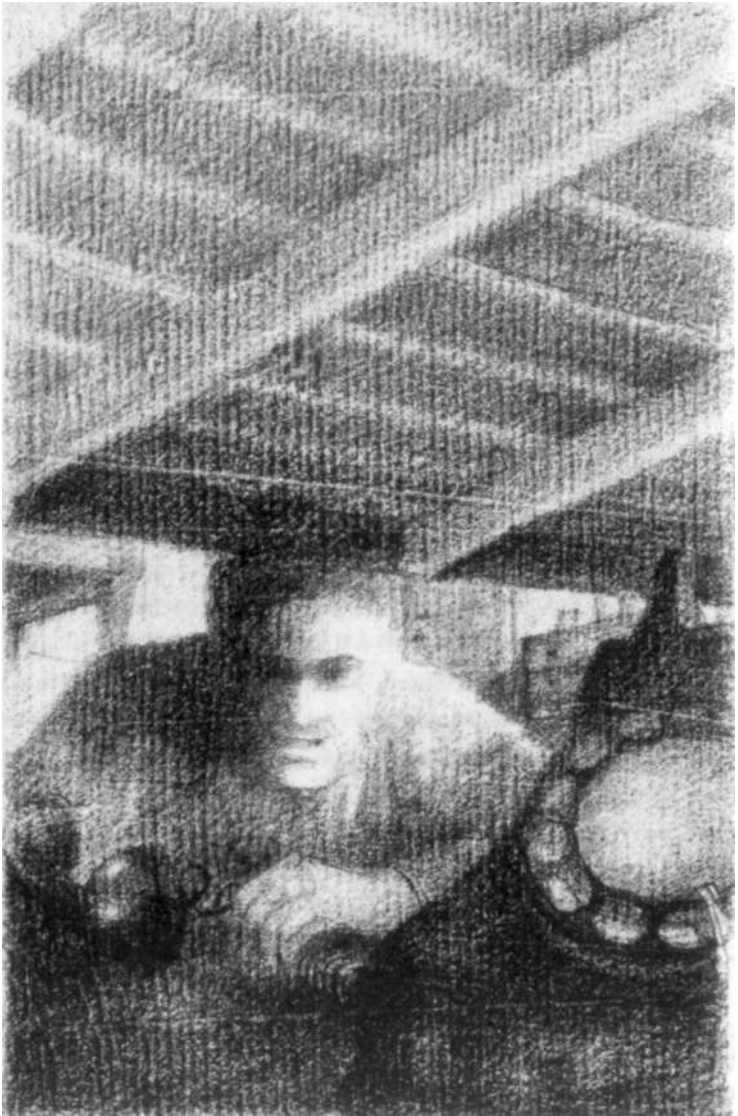
'Hate you for what?' Owen asked stupidly. 'I don't know you. Who did you murder?'

Guy felt very tired. 'You have to go,' he said to Owen. 'You don't understand.'

Owen was very drunk and he didn't move.

'I'll call a taxi for you,' Guy said.

But where was the phone? Guy looked on the floor and saw it under the bed. The phone was lying near his chair so that



Guy looked on the floor and saw the phone under the bed. It was lying near his chair so that someone could listen to everything he was saying.

someone could listen to everything he was saying. He picked it up.

'Hello?' he said.

'Hello, Mr Haines,' Gerard's voice said. 'I heard what you said to Mr Markham. May I come in?'

Guy opened the door and looked at Gerard's big smile. Guy tried to speak, but he said something completely different from what he wanted. He said, 'Take me.'

ACTIVITIES

Chapters 1-3

Before you read

- 1 Would you ever talk to a stranger on a train? Why/why not? What sort of things do strangers talk about? Discuss your ideas with another student.
- 2 Find these words in your dictionary.

architect divorce pregnant

Match the words in Group A with the words in Group B.

A: *architect divorce pregnant*

B: *baby couple plans*

Now write three sentences, with two of the words in each sentence.

After you read

- 3 Who are these people in the story? What do you know about them?

- a Guy
- b Bruno
- c Miriam
- d Anne
- e Mr Brillhart

- 4 Work with another student. Have a conversation.

Student A: You are Guy. You have just met Bruno on the train, and you are talking to him. Tell him about your feelings for Miriam and Anne, and why you want a divorce.

Student B: You are Bruno. You want to make friends with Guy. Ask him questions about his life. Tell him about your mother, and why you hate your father.

Chapters 4-7

Before you read

- 5 Do you think Guy is going to try to contact Bruno about killing his wife? Why/why not?
- 6 Find this word in your dictionary: *inquest*.

When does an inquest take place?

- a Before a person is killed.
- b Immediately after a person is killed.
- c A long time after a person is killed.

After you read

7 Answer these questions:

- a Where does Bruno tell his friends he is going on the train? Why?
- b Where does Bruno really go?
- c Where does Miriam live in Metcalf? How does Bruno find out her address?
- d Where do Miriam and her friends go?
- e Where does Bruno kill Miriam? How does he kill her?

8 Guy doesn't go to the police when he realizes what Bruno has done. Why not? Would you tell the police if you were in his situation? Why/why not? Talk to another student.

Chapters 8-10

Before you read

9 Look at the picture on page 22. Who do you think the three people in the picture are? What are they thinking?

10 Find these words in your dictionary.

scratch truth

- a The cat . . . the woman because she stood on its tail.
- b When he said he did not steal the car, he was telling the

After you read

11 Who says or writes these words? What's happening?

- a 'We must go, we must go.'
- b 'I'm going to tell the police about you.'
- c 'You must kill my father soon.'
- d 'Are the police still asking questions?'
- e 'Oh, Guy, I'll never see you again.'

- 12** Read Chapter 10 again, and then work with another student. Draw a plan together of Bruno's house and garden. Draw a line show where Guy went. Look at other people's plans. Are they the same as yours, or different?

Chapters 11-15

Before you read

- 13** Do you think Guy is going to get caught by the police or escape? Talk to another student.
- 14** Find this word in your dictionary: *proof*.
What sort of proof do the police collect to solve a murder case? Think of some examples you have read or heard about, and then discuss your ideas with another student.

After you read

- 15** Answer these questions:
- a** How does Gerard know the murderer ran across the grass and jumped over the wall?
 - b** Why does Guy clean his flat again and again?
 - c** Why does Guy throw the whisky bottle against the wall before his wedding?
 - d** Why does Anne like Bruno?
 - e** Why does Bruno say that Guy is in more trouble with the police than he is? Do you think this is true?
- 16** How does Guy's life slowly separate into two parts - the good man and the bad? What do you think it would feel like to be in this position? What do you think you would do?

Chapters 16-19

Before you read

- 17** Look at the pictures in these chapters. Can you guess what is going to happen to **a** Guy and **b** Bruno at the end of the story? Discuss your ideas with another student.

After you read

18 Are these sentences true or false?

- a** Bruno's phone bills help Gerard to find out the truth about when Bruno met Guy.
- b** Gerard thinks that Bruno is guilty, but he hasn't got proof.
- c** There are four people on the *India* before Bruno dies.
- d** Guy feels better after Bruno has fallen into the sea and died.
- e** Owen tells Gerard about Guy, Bruno and the murders because he still loves Miriam.

19 In the final sentence in the book, Guy wants to say something 'completely different' to Gerard. What do you think he wants to say?

Writing

- 20** You work for *The New York Times*. Write a newspaper report after Guy is arrested. Write about who Guy and Bruno were; how they planned the 'perfect crime'; how they murdered Miriam and Bruno's father; and how Guy was finally caught.
- 21** You are Guy. You have been in prison for a year and you are going to stay there for the rest of your life. Write a letter to Anne. Tell her about why you murdered Bruno's father, and how you felt at the time. Write about your feelings for her too.
- 22** How does Patricia Highsmith make this story so exciting and frightening? How does she make us want to go on reading to find out what happens? Think about how Bruno slowly makes Guy agree to his plan; how Anne gets to know that Guy has done something wrong; and how Gerard slowly works out how Guy and Bruno did the murders.
- 23** Guy and Bruno both murder someone. In your opinion, do they both think about and do the murders in the same way? Is one murder worse than the other? Is it always wrong to kill someone? Write about your ideas, with examples of other murders if possible.
- 24** You are making a film of *Strangers on a Train*. Make a short plan for filming Miriam's murder on the island. Write some notes and make some drawings. A film is very different from a book and you might have to change some parts of the story.

- 25** Do you think this is a murder story, or a detective story, or is it about other things? What are they?

Answers for the Activities in this book are published in our free resource packs for teachers, the Penguin Readers Factsheets, or available on a separate sheet. Please write to your local Pearson Education office or to: Marketing Department, Penguin Longman Publishing, 5 Bentinck Street, London W1M 5RN.



"You murder my father and I'll murder your wife."

After Guy Haines meets Charley Bruno on a train he tries to forget about Bruno's plan for the perfect murder. But from this moment Guy is pulled into a world of madness, lies and death - and there is no escape.

Penguin Readers are simplified texts designed in association with Longman, the world famous educational publisher, to provide a step-by-step approach to the joys of reading for pleasure. Each book has an introduction and extensive activity material. They are published at seven levels from Easystarts (200 words) to Advanced (3000 words).

Series Editors: Andy Hopkins and Jocelyn Potter

NEW EDITION



- 6 Advanced (3000 words)
- 5 Upper Intermediate (2300 words)
- 4 Intermediate (1700 words)
- 3 Pre-Intermediate (1200 words)
- 2 Elementary (600 words)
- 1 Beginner (300 words)
- Easystarts (200 words)



- Contemporary
- Classics
- Originals



- British English
- American English

www.penguinreaders.com

Cover photograph © Michael Salas/The Image Bank



Published and distributed by
Pearson Education Limited

ISBN 0-582-41812-7



9 780582 418127



Strangers on a Train

Patricia Highsmith



About the author

Patricia Highsmith was born in Texas in 1921. She was an only child and her parents separated before her birth. Her mother remarried and the family moved to New York, where she went to school and college.

From an early age, Patricia was interested in people who behaved strangely. At the age of nine her favourite book was *The Human Mind* by Karl Menninger, a book of case histories of people with mental disturbances. Her early stories were always about unusual or criminal behavior. At sixteen, she wrote *A Mighty Nice Man*, a story about a man who persuades two little girls to get into his car, but lets them out for fear of being caught. One of the girls, talking about him later says: "He was a mighty nice man."

Highsmith published short stories throughout her twenties, and achieved worldwide success with her first novel, *Strangers on a Train*, published when she was twenty-eight. It was a best-seller and Alfred Hitchcock made a film of it in 1951. From this point on, a steady stream of novels and short stories followed. Her series of novels about Tom Ripley became particularly notorious. Highsmith was not only a highly successful writer of suspense and crime fiction. She was also a talented painter and sculptor, and exhibited part of her works.

She lived in England, France and Switzerland, where she died in 1995.

Summary

Strangers on a Train is a taut crime thriller. An American architect, Guy Haines, is on his way to his home town to meet his wife, Miriam. On the train, he has dinner with a rich young man, Charles Bruno, who becomes drunk,

tells him that he hates his father, and suggests that he should murder Miriam, who Guy doesn't love any more and wants to divorce, and Guy should murder his father, who refuses to give him money. This would be the perfect murder. Guy resolves never to see Bruno again, but Bruno is mad, looks for Miriam and murders her.

Guy tries to live a normal life with his new fiancée, Anne. But Bruno threatens to tell the police that Guy paid him to kill Miriam unless Guy kills his father. Guy feels trapped in the situation and finally breaks down and murders Bruno's father. From this point on Guy is haunted by terrible guilt. He feels that he is split into two men. He hates Bruno, but at the same time feels a close and terrible bond with him.

Meanwhile, a detective, Arthur Gerard, is on the trail of Bruno and Guy. By now, Bruno is a friend of Anne's. They go sailing and Bruno, drunk as usual, falls into the sea and drowns. Guy feels terribly lonely. He has lost 'his brother'. He visits the man who was Miriam's lover and confesses the story of the murders. Unknown to him, Gerard is listening. 'Take me,' says Guy.

Chapters 1–2: Guy Haines is on a train, reading a book and thinking of Anne, the woman he loves. He meets Charles Bruno and they have dinner together. Bruno tells Guy that he hates his father, who refuses to give him money. Guy tells Bruno that Miriam is pregnant and makes trouble about the divorce. Completely drunk, Bruno suggests he could kill Miriam and Guy could kill Bruno's father. Guy leaves Bruno's room, disgusted, and forgets his book. Once in Metcalf, his home town, Guy finds out that Miriam wants to move with him until her fiancé gets his divorce. With his plan still in mind, Bruno makes his first call.

Chapters 3–5: Guy tells Anne that he feels he hates Miriam when he has to refuse a job in Florida because she threatens to move there. But Miriam loses the baby and Guy gets the job back. In the meantime, Bruno, on holiday in Mexico with a frivolous mother, begins to plan Miriam's death from the details that Guy mentioned in their conversation. At the station on his way to Metcalf, he meets his friend Wilson. Once in Metcalf, he finds Miriam's address in the directory, follows her in a taxi to an amusement park and strangles her. After a short visit to a bar, he goes back to the station and asks a taxi driver where he can get a woman.



Strangers on a Train

Chapters 6–8: Guy is with Anne when his mother phones to inform him of the murder. He gets stunned. He can't remember what exactly he said to Bruno on the train. Guy tries to get Bruno out of his mind, but cards, letters and phone calls confirm his fears: it was Bruno. In his panic and guilt, Guy begins to lie. Meanwhile, in California, Bruno feels powerful. He tells his mother he has met Guy on a train when she sees his newspaper cut-outs with stories about the murder. Bruno feels his bond with Guy has given him a reason to live, so Guy's rejection hurts him deeply. A few months later, he goes back to Guy and threatens to involve him in Miriam's murder unless he kills his father. He writes, calls, sends Guy a plan, a weapon and a map of the house, and finally, a letter to Anne. Guy keeps lying.

Chapters 9–10: After three months, Bruno sends a second letter, now to a company that is about to employ Guy. Guy loses the job and decides that killing Bruno's father is the only way out of the trap he is in. And he kills him. Except for some pieces of his torn gloves that stay on some tree branches, a few scratches on his face and hands and a servant that sees him from afar, the plan works out, and Guy can escape. The need to keep lying and his fear of losing Anne make him cry.

Chapters 11–13: Arthur Gerard is Bruno's father's detective. He has reconstructed the murderer's steps and suspects that Bruno may be involved in the crime. Bruno rejoices in the perfection of his plan, but he gets broken when he overhears his ever-protective mother tell Gerard that she would inform him of anything Bruno said. What if she remembered the cut-outs? Guy, in the meantime, tries to fight his guilt and feels split into two men, the murderer and the architect about to marry Anne. Bruno turns up at the wedding and Guy feels on the edge of being discovered.

Chapters 14–16: Guy's feeling of guilt and Bruno's feeling of rejection grow with Bruno's successive visits. Gerard finds Bruno's bills for his telephone calls to Metcalf and the flowers for Anne, as well as Guy's book. The waiter on the train has told him that Bruno and Guy had dinner together. Gerard asks questions to Bruno, Guy and Anne.

Chapters 17–19: Gerard tells the story to the police. He knows what has happened but cannot prove it. Some time later, the police stop asking questions. Guy is living in Canada and Anne is pregnant. But Bruno turns up once

again. During an outing on the boat, drunk and feeling unfit, Bruno falls to the water and drowns. Bruno's death leaves Guy in utter loneliness. He cannot take all the responsibility for the crimes. He writes a letter to Anne and goes to see Owen, Miriam's fiancé. In his own hotel room and despite Owen's indifference, Guy tells him the story of the crimes. Under the bed, the telephone is off the hook, and Gerard takes Guy.

Background and themes

Strangers on a Train is a psychological study of madness, entrapment, guilt, and complicity.

Madness and entrapment: Highsmith explores how both ordered and disordered lives can lead to "abnormal" behavior and disturbed minds. The limits of entrapment, innocence and guilt, and madness and sanity fade as the story develops and the reader is faced with a Guy who isn't completely innocent and a Bruno that can be seen as a victim.

The awakening of Guy's destructive desires suggests that conflict between conscious behavior and subconscious desire may trigger the criminal potential in anyone, and result in immoral action, the doubling of personality and the consequent ethical and psychological degradation.

Guilt and complicity: Patricia Highsmith once commented that she is "interested in the effect of guilt" on her heroes. This novel is a study of guilt, and the kind of pressures that destroy a man's soul. The exploration of guilt also provokes a reflection on the definition and limits of complicity.

Discussion activities

Chapters 1–2

Before reading

- Group work:** In groups, students read the title of the book and the chapter headings. They guess what the story may be about and who the "strangers on a train" are. Groups share their ideas and vote for the prediction they like best.

After reading

- Discuss:** Students work in groups. Ask them: *What kind of parents do you think Bruno has? What kind of childhood do you think he had? Why?*
- Role play:** Put students in pairs. Tell them: *Imagine Miriam is telling Owen about her plans to go to Florida with Guy. How do you think Owen reacts? Write and role play their conversation.* Ask students to keep their conversations so they can compare them with Owen's feelings at the end of the novel.



Strangers on a Train

Chapters 3–5

Before reading

- 4 **Guess:** Students read the title of Chapter 3. In pairs they discuss what they think the good news is.

After reading

- 5 **Discuss:** Students work in groups. Tell them: *Bruno is a murderer and a bad man. But is he mad as well? Give reasons for your opinion.*
Have the groups report their conclusions to the class. Then divide the class into two groups and have them debate this question: *If Bruno is mad, does this mean he isn't responsible for his actions? Should a mad person be punished?*
- 6 **Write:** Tell students: *An alibi is proof that a person was in another place when a crime was committed. Imagine Bruno is making up his alibi. Write what he can tell the police about what he was doing on the day Miriam was murdered. Remember that some people saw him.* Students vote for the best alibi.

Chapters 6–8

Before reading

- 7 **Guess:** Tell students: *These are lines from one of these chapters. What do you think is happening?* “Guy was looking at his drawings, but there were no houses on the paper, they were all drawings of Bruno’s smiling face with his red, tired eyes.”

After reading

- 8 **Read carefully and discuss:**
- Divide the class into three groups. They read pages 19, 21 and 26 respectively and find the lies that Guy begins to tell and who he tells them to.
 - The whole class then discusses the reasons why Guy tells these lies.
- 9 **Discuss:** Divide the class into two groups and have them discuss this question: *Guy feels guilty because he hasn't stopped Bruno killing Miriam. Is he really guilty?*
- 10 **Pair work:** Students look up the word “trap” in the dictionary. Tell them: *Guy is in a trap. What is it?*

Chapters 9–10

Before reading

- 11 **Guess:** In pairs, students discuss the following question: *Bruno sent two letters saying that Guy knew about Miriam's murder. One letter was for Anne. Who do you think he sent the second letter to? Why?*

After reading

- 12 **Pair work, Discuss:** In pairs, students take the roles of Bruno and Guy and take turns to narrate the scene at the end of Chapter 10 with the focus on their feelings. Then the whole class discusses this apparent paradox: *Guy accepts what he doesn't want and feels better; Bruno gets what he wants, but is sad.*

- 13 **Artwork:** In groups, students make Bruno’s map. On it, they write notes from his plan. They may include details of the house and surroundings that aren’t mentioned in the narration but complete the drawing. Maps are displayed on the classroom walls.

Chapters 11–13

Before reading

- 14 **Guess:** Students work in pairs. Tell them: *In these chapters we learn that Guy won't take any money for building something to try to fight his guilt. What do you think he will build? Why?* Pairs share their ideas with the class.

After reading

- 15 **Role play:** Students work in pairs. Tell them: *Bruno is afraid that his mother remembers the stories about Guy from the newspaper. Imagine he has a conversation with her to try to find out if she does. Decide whether she remembers or not.*

Chapters 14–16

Before reading

- 16 **Guess:** Ask students: *Why do you think Chapter 14 is called The Secret Brother? Who do you think this secret brother is?*

After reading

- 17 **Check and discuss:** Check students’ predictions in activity 16. Tell them: *On page 38, Guy thinks of the bad man inside him as “his secret brother” and Bruno wants to hold Guy’s hand “like a brother”. Do you think the title of the chapter refers to both things? What are Bruno’s and Guy’s feelings for each other? What are Guy’s feelings about himself?*
- 18 **Discuss:** Tell students: *At this point, it isn't very important whether Guy is caught or not. His guilt is a prison.* In groups, students discuss the statement.

Chapters 17–19

Before reading

- 19 **Guess and write:** Tell students: *Are Bruno and Guy going to be caught? Write the ending you would like the story to have.*

After reading

- 20 **Check:** Ask students to check Owen’s feelings against their conversations in activity 3.
- 21 **Discuss, Group work:** Students work in groups. Ask them: *Why do you think Guy writes a letter to Anne? And why does he tell Owen the truth about the murders?* Groups report their conclusions and compare them to their ideas in activity 18.

Vocabulary activities

For the Word List and vocabulary activities, go to www.penguinreaders.com.

Strangers on a Train

Photocopiable

While reading

Chapters 1–2

- 1 Answer these questions. Who has ...
- a very smooth skin?
 - b bad front teeth?
 - c a cruel mouth?
 - d dead eyes?
- 2 Complete the following sentences.
- a Guy's mother would be unhappy if
..... soon.
 - b Guy felt happy when he thought he would
..... soon.
 - c Guy meets Bruno on the train in the month
of.....
 - d Guy felt that Bruno's room was like Hell
because

Chapters 3–5

- 3 Answer these questions.
- a Why does Guy think Miriam won't be a problem in a week?
 - b Why does Bruno want to kill Miriam?
 - c Do you think this meeting with Wilson may be important later in the story?
 - d What does Bruno tell Wilson?
 - e Does Bruno think that an amusement park is a good place for a crime? Why?
- 4 Use the clues to complete the chart. What is the word?
- a a letter that is twice in the name of one of the characters of this story
 - b the second letter of the name of the animal that Bruno compares Miriam to when he is killing her
 - c the last letter of the name of the animal that Bruno compares Miriam to when she is eating ice-cream
 - d the third letter of the day of the week on which Miriam died
 - e the second letter of the name of Wilson's friend
 - f the third letter of the name of the town that Bruno tells Wilson that he is going to
 - g the last letter of the transport Bruno used in Metcalf

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	b

Chapters 6–8

- 5 Write notes of the actions/things that you think may become evidence of a crime. Share them with your class.

page	action/thing	reason
18	Bruno sends Guy a card from a taxi Co in Metcalf	Evidence that Bruno is in Metcalf and knows Guy

- 6 'Pig Latin' is a secret language in which the first consonant of a word is moved to the end and 'ay' is added. Imagine Bruno made a little change to the rule to make a secret code to write to Guy. Find the rule. Which of these messages did Bruno send to Guy? What do they say?
- a iceney owntey Etcalfmey.
 - b Itey isey ouryey urntey owney.
 - c Iey avehey illedkey ouryey ifewey.
 - d alley oodgey isheswey romfey hetey oldengey estwey.

Chapters 9–10

- 7 Bruno and Guy made a plan. Write ✓ next to the events that did NOT happen as planned and X next to the others. Then put the events in order. Write numbers 2–7.

Example:

- a ☒ 1 Guy walked into the house at midnight. ☒
- b ☐ Guy's gun didn't shoot the first two times he fired it. ☐
- c ☐ Parts of Guy's gloves stayed on the trees. ☐
- d ☐ The door of the bedroom was closed. ☐
- e ☐ The servants were in the house. ☐
- f ☐ The window of the bedroom was half open. ☐
- g ☐ Guy hurt a servant who saw him. ☐

Chapters 11–13

- 8 Find sentences in the book to support these statements.
- a Bruno's mother thought it was possible that Bruno had information about his father's murder.



Strangers on a Train

Photocopiable

- b Bruno’s feelings changed: sometimes he felt powerful and sometimes he felt in danger.
- c Guy believed he was guilty of Miriam’s death.
- d Anne realized that something was happening to Guy.

9 What do the words in *italics* mean? As you read, complete the table.

page	sentence	means
32	“Gerard was too stupid to find out about <i>him</i> .”	a
	“We found <i>these</i> .”	b
	“ <i>He</i> knew where to go.”	c
	“ <i>The whole thing</i> was planned.”	d
33	“... but he needed more and more whisky for <i>that</i> , and ...”	e
	“ <i>We</i> could eat <i>some</i> .”	f
		g
34	“ <i>That</i> ’ll take you a year.”	h
35	“ <i>This</i> is worse than the murder.”	i
	“ <i>We</i> play tennis sometimes.”	j
	“ <i>Didn’t</i> we, Guy?”	k

Chapters 14–19

10 Complete the sentences. The second word in each sentence is formed with four letters from the first word and a fifth letter; for example: *alone–along*. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- a Guy wrote a letter to Anne because he had a _____ feeling that all he was doing was _____ . ☐
- b Bruno couldn’t be _____ because the _____ were as high as mountains and Guy was afraid of water. ☐
- c Owen was so _____ that he probably didn’t notice that the telephone was _____ the bed. ☐

11 Use the clues to complete the crossword puzzle.

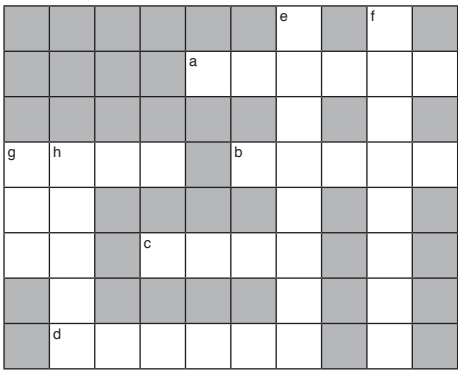
Across

- a the person who saw Guy and Bruno on the train
- b the number of weeks Guy and Anna were away from home on a trip
- c the month Guy said to Gerard he had seen Bruno again

- d the season in which Gerard went to see Anne
- g what Gerard had from the ties that Bruno bought

Down

- e the number of months between the train trip and Gerard’s investigation
- f the month in which Guy and Bruno said they met
- g the name of the person that offered Guy a job in Canada
- h the name on Anne’s boat



12 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? The CAPITAL letters in the *true* sentences form a phrase. Add it to the ending of the story. Does this make a big change to the ending or not? Why?

- a ☐ The CHief of Police knEw all the story when Gerard told it to him.
- b ☐ Guy went to Canada to BUild a bridge.
- c ☐ Guy felT very happy when Anne Said she was pregnant.
- d ☐ The weatHer was nOT very good when Guy, Anne and tHeIr friends went sailing on the India.
- e ☐ Guy killEd BruNo.
- f ☐ Guy decided to write a letter to Anne and look for Owen Markham.
- g ☐ Guy thought GerArd could be on the plane to Houston.
- h ☐ OweN Didn’t Love Miriam and didn’t want the baby.
- i ☐ GERard had put the telephone under the bed beFore Guy goT back to the hotel.

After reading

13 Does the perfect crime exist? Discuss it with another student.



Strangers on a Train

Photocopiable

Chapters 1–2

- 1 Match a–d with 1–4 to make sentences.
- a Guy works
 - b Bruno gets money from
 - c Bruno would like to murder
 - d Bruno drinks
 - 1) too much.
 - 2) his father.
 - 3) his mother.
 - 4) as an architect.
- 2 Who is who? Write the right numbers to make true sentences.
- a Guy's girlfriend
 - b Guy's wife
 - 1) wants to go to Florida with him.
 - 2) is in Mexico.
 - 3) is pregnant.
 - 4) is richer than him.
 - 5) is proud of him.
 - 6) is in contact with his mother.

Chapters 3–5

- 3 Choose the right answer, 1, 2 or 3.
- a Who travelled from Long Island to Santa Fe and then to California?
 - 1) It was Bruno's mother.
 - 2) It was Guy.
 - 3) It was Anne.
 - b Who travelled from Metcalf to Mexico City?
 - 1) It was Bruno's mother.
 - 2) It was Bruno.
 - 3) It was Guy.
 - c Who travelled from Long Island to Santa Fe and then to Metcalf?
 - 1) It was Bruno.
 - 2) It was Guy.
 - 3) It was Anne.

Chapters 6–8

- 4 Are these sentences right (✓), wrong (X) or it doesn't say (?)
- a After Miriam was killed, Guy took a train to Metcalf. ☐
 - b Bruno found Guy's address easily. ☐
 - c Bruno thought Miriam's murder had been a great act. ☐
 - d Bruno cried because of the pain in his chest. ☐
 - e Bruno finally met Guy the year after he killed Miriam. ☐

Chapters 9–10

- 5 Complete these sentences with words from the box.
- | |
|--------------------------------------|
| scratches map job gun gloves |
|--------------------------------------|
- a Mr Fear doesn't give Guy a
 - b Bruno gives Guy a, but Guy decides to use his own.
 - c Bruno also gives Guy a
 - d Guy loses the in some trees.
 - e Anne is surprised when she sees in Guy's hands.

Chapters 11–13

- 6 Write the right names.
- Bob Faulkner Clark's Arthur Bruno Treacher
Elsie Teddy Gerard
- a Bruno's father's detective:
 - b the bar where Bruno went on the night of his father's murder:
 - c Bruno's mother:
 - d Guy's friend:
 - e Guy's wife's cousin:

Chapters 14–16

- 7 Find the mistakes.
- a Gerard knows that Owen is lying because he has phone bills and has spoken to a waiter.
 - b Anne tells her parents that Guy was very nervous in March.
 - c Guy tells Anne that he lied about Bruno because he was frightened.
 - d Gerard knows that the phone calls stopped after Mr. Bruno's death.
 - e Gerard knows that Bruno met Guy on the train because some passengers saw them together.

Chapters 17–19

- 8 Write the names from the box in the right places.
- | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wilson Dawland Guy Bruno Gerard
Owen a taxi driver |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
- (a) tells the Chief of police,
 - (b), that he thinks that (c) killed Mr. Samuel Bruno and that (d) killed Miriam Haines. He has some proof. He has spoken with (e), who saw (f) at the station in Santa Fe, and with (g) He also has the bills of the telephone calls that (h) made to Metcalf. He can finally solve the crimes when (i) decides to speak with (j), and (k) hears their conversation through the telephone.



Strangers on a Train

Book key

- 1 a an architect
b pregnant
c divorced
d scratch
e telegrams
f shame/guilt
g an inquest
- 2 a 2 b 1 c 2 d 2
- 3 Open answers
- 4 a Miriam
b Texas
c Guy
d Bruno's private room
e mother
f Bruno
g Metcalf
h Mexico
- 5 a, c, e
- 6 Open answers
- 7 a Possible answer:
Miriam can tell people that the baby is Guy's baby.
They will think badly of him if he does not look after her.
b Open answers
- 8 a Anne
b Mr Brillhart, Florida
c His mother
- 9 a ✓ b ✗ c ✓ d ✗ e ✓ f ✓ g ✓ h ✓
i ✗ j ✓ k ✓
- 10–11 Open answers
- 12 a 1 b 1 c 2 d 1 e 2 f 1
- 13 a ✓ b ✓ c ✓ d ✓
- 14–15 Open answers
- 16 a because of Bruno.
b while he's asleep.
c some gloves and a key.
d to Bruno's house.
e up the back stairs.
f he is in a play.
g in his bed.
h across the garden.
i but he escapes.
j but doesn't stop him.
k the lights of a town.

17–18 Open answers

- 19 a father
b hamburger
c morning
d bar
e murderer
f grass
g branches
h knew
- 20 a feeling guilty
b hopes
c haven't
d doesn't enjoy
e pretends to be

21–22 Open answers

- 23 a ✓ b ✗ c ✓ d ✗ e ✓ f ✓ g ✓
h ✗ (she sees him drop *something* into the sea)
- 24 a Y b Y c N d Y e NS

25 Possible answers:

- a He has no other friends.
- b Bruno bought flowers for Guy's wife.
- c He hates him because he has destroyed his life; he likes him because they share a secret/Bruno needs him.
- d Whisky.
- e He was preparing to murder Bruno's father.

26 Open answers

- 27 a Arthur Gerard
b Guy
c Guy
d Bruno
e Bob Treacher
f Guy
g Guy

28 Open answers

29 Possible answers:

- a It connects Bruno and Guy before Miriam's murder.
- b Guy wears these when he murders Bruno's father. He loses them in the garden.
- c This leads Gerard from Bruno to Guy.
- d The taxi driver remembers taking Bruno to the amusement park.

30–39 Open answers

Strangers on a Train

Discussion activities key

- 1–7 Open answers
- 8 **a** page 19 Guy lies to his mother about Bruno’s telegram and phone call; page 21 Guy lies to Anne about who Bruno is and what he wants; page 26 Guy lies to Anne about Bruno’s letter and about what is happening.
- b–10** Open answers
- 11 Open answers; the letter was sent to Mr. Frear of the Shaw Company, where Guy had asked for a job.
- 12–13 Open answers
- 14 Open answers; he will build a hospital.
- 15–21 Open answers

Activity worksheets key

- 1 **a** Bruno **b** Miriam **c** Miriam **d** Miriam
- 2 **a** Miriam made trouble
- b** see Anne and/or start his job in Florida
- c** May
- d** Bruno was speaking of murder in a hot and untidy room
- 3 Possible answers:
- a, c** Open answers; still unanswered in this section
- b** Possible answers: Bruno is insane / On p. 14 we learn that he feels Guy is his friend, which gives him a reason to live; he would do anything for Guy and thinks he helps him by killing Miriam / He expects Guy will kill his father in return.
- d** that he is going to Tulsa, to see friends
- e** yes, because there is music, laughs, people
- 4 Magnolia
- a** M; Miriam
- b** A; rat
- c** G; pig
- d** N; Sunday
- e** O; Joe
- f** L; Tulsa
- g** I; taxi

M	A	G	N	O	L	I	A
a	b	c	d	e	f	g	b

5 Possible answers:

page	action/thing	reason
18	Bruno sends Guy a card from a taxi Co in Metcalf	Evidence that Bruno is in Metcalf and knows Guy
19	Bruno sends Guy a telegram	Evidence that they know each other
19	Bruno telephones Guy’s mother and sends Guy a letter to Florida saying he will be careful	Evidence that they know each other and there is something to be careful about
20	Bruno tells his mother that he knows Guy and lets her see the cut-outs from newspapers about Miriam’s murder	Evidence that they know each other.
21	Guy sends a note to Bruno	Evidence that they know each other
23	Bruno visits Guy	Evidence that they know each other
23	Bruno sends Guy a map of his house, a written plan, a total of 21 letters and a gun	All letters and the gun are evidence

- 6 Rule: Move the first consonant sound to the end and add ‘ey’. If there is no initial consonant sound, only add ‘ey’.
- a** Nice town Metcalf. ✓
- b** It is your turn now.
- c** I have killed your wife.
- d** All good wishes from the golden west. ✓
- 7 **b** 5 ✓ **c** 7 ✓ **d** 3 ✗ **e** 2 ✗ **f** 4 ✓ **g** 6 ✓
- 8 **a** She asked Gerard if he thought Bruno knew about it and promised to tell him anything Bruno might say. (page 31)
- b** At times he felt Guy and himself were like Gods (page 32) but he needed more and more whisky to sleep (page 33) and was afraid his mother remembered about the stories about Guy in the newspapers.
- c** He felt the bad man in himself had killed Bruno’s father and helped kill Miriam. (page 33)
- d** She suggested he was working too hard and asked if Miriam’s death had changed him. (page 34)



Strangers on a Train

- 9 a Guy
b pieces of gloves
c the murderer
d the murder
e sleeping
f Guy, Anne and her parents
g ducks or other birds
h building a hospital
i lying to Anne
j Bruno and Teddy Faulkner
k go to school together
- 10 a strong / wrong / T
b saved / waves / F
c drunk / under / T
- 11 a waiter
b three
c June
d autumn
e eighteen
f December
g bill (Across); Bob (Down)
h India

						E		D	
				W	A	I	T	E	R
						G		C	
B	I	L	L		T	H	R	E	E
O	N					T		M	
B	D		J	U	N	E		B	
	I					E		E	
	A	U	T	U	M	N		R	

- 12 a F b T c T d T e F f T g T h T
i T

Phrase: but shot him and left

- 13 Open answers

Progress test key

- 1 a 4 b 3 c 2 d 1
- 2 a: 2, 4, 5
b: 1, 3, 6
- 3 a 1 b 3 c 1
- 4 a X b ? c ✓ d X e ✓
- 5 a job b gun c map d gloves e scratches
- 6 a Arthur Gerard
b Clark's
c Elsie Bruno
d Bob Treacher
e Teddy Faulkner
- 7 a Guy and Bruno are lying.
b She tells Gerard.
c He says he lied because he doesn't want the police to use his information to hang an innocent man.
d They stopped after Miriam's death.
e The waiter saw them together.
- 8 a Gerard
b Dawland
c Guy
d Bruno
e Wilson
f Bruno
g a taxi driver
h Bruno
i Guy
j Owen
k Gerard

A large, dark, and dramatic movie poster for 'Cinderella Man'. The top half features a close-up of two men's faces, one looking up and the other down, in a tense, intimate pose. The bottom half shows a boxer in a white robe celebrating a victory in a boxing ring, with a large crowd of spectators cheering and raising their arms in the foreground. The title 'Cinderella Man' is written in a large, white, serif font across the middle of the poster.

Cinderella Man













PENGUIN READERS



Jim Braddock is a successful boxer in New York. Life is good for him and his young family. But in October 1929 the American economy fails, and at the same time Jim starts to lose in the boxing ring. How will he support his wife and children now? Will he get a second chance to return to the ring? Does the true story of Jim Braddock – the Cinderella Man – have a happy ending?

Penguin Readers are simplified texts designed in association with Longman, the world famous educational publisher, to provide a step-by-step approach to the joys of reading for pleasure. Each book has an introduction and extensive activity material. They are published at seven levels from Easystarts (200 words) to Advanced (3000 words).

Series Editors: Andy Hopkins and Jocelyn Potter

	6 Advanced (3000 words)		Contemporary
	5 Upper Intermediate (2300 words)		Classics
	4 Intermediate (1700 words)		Originals
	3 Pre-Intermediate (1200 words)		
	2 Elementary (600 words)		
	1 Beginner (300 words)		British English
	Easystarts (200 words)		American English

Number of words (excluding activities): 15,600



Book/CD pack also published

www.penguinreaders.com

Cover Artwork 2006 Universal Studios Publishing Rights, a division of universal Studios Licensing Inc. All rights reserved

UNIVERSAL PICTURES MIRAMAX FILMS IMPERIAL ENTERTAINMENT PRESENT A BRIAN GRAZER PRODUCTION IN ASSOCIATION WITH PARKWAY PRODUCTIONS "CINDERELLA MAN" PAUL GRANT
 CRAIG BIEKO ROBERT AGOSTA PATRICK CONVILLE CASTING BY THOMAS NEWMAN DESIGNER DANIEL TIRLANDI COSTUME DESIGNER PATRICIA HARRIS EDITOR LOUISA WELLS PRODUCTION DESIGNER KATE LEE MUSIC BY DAN HANLEY EXECUTIVE PRODUCERS
 PRODUCED BY THOMAS NEWMAN WRITTEN BY BRIAN GRAZER AND HOWARD PENNY DIRECTED BY JOHN DAHLQUIST
 MIRA MAX IMAGINE PG-13 PARENTS STRONGLY CAUTIONED
 Some Material May Be Inappropriate for Children Under 13
 www.cinderellamanmovie.com A UNIVERSAL PICTURE



Published and distributed by
Pearson Education Limited

ISBN 1-405-80642-7



9 781405 806428

Cinderella Man

Written By

MARC CERASINI

Based on the Motion Picture Screenplay By

CLIFF HOLLINGSWORTH and AKIVA GOLDSMAN

Motion Picture Story By

CLIFF HOLLINGSWORTH

Level 4

Retold by Paul Shipton

Series Editors: Andy Hopkins and Jocelyn Potter

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate, Harlow,
Essex CM20 2JE, England
and Associated Companies throughout the world.

ISBN-10: 1-4058-0642-7
ISBN-13: 978-1-4058-0642-8

This edition first published by Penguin Books 2006

Text copyright © Penguin Books 2006

Typeset by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong
Set in 11/14pt Bembo
Printed in China
SWTC/01

Produced for the Publishers by
Graphicraft Productions Limited, Dartford, UK

*All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored
in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means,
electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the
prior written permission of the Publishers.*

Published by Pearson Education Limited in association with
Penguin Books Ltd, both companies being subsidiaries of Pearson Plc

Acknowledgement

Photograph page: viii © Estate of James J. Braddock

Contents

	page
Introduction	v
Chapter 1 A Lucky Man	1
Chapter 2 Hard Times	7
Chapter 3 An Embarrassment	12
Chapter 4 A New Life	16
Chapter 5 Broken Promises	20
Chapter 6 One Fight Only	27
Chapter 7 Back in the Ring	31
Chapter 8 A Second Chance	36
Chapter 9 Not the Same Guy	41
Chapter 10 Night in the Park	46
Chapter 11 Face to Face with the Champion	49
Chapter 12 The Big Day	54
Chapter 13 The Hopes of the Crowd	60
Chapter 14 The Luckiest Man	65
Activities	71

For a complete list of the titles available in the Penguin Readers series please write to your local
Pearson Education office or to: Penguin Readers Marketing Department, Pearson Education,
Edinburgh Gate, Harlow, Essex, CM20 2JE

Introduction

As Jim Braddock stepped out into the bright lights, the crowd became silent. The ring seemed so far away. Between him and it were thousands of people—Jim's people. He knew the looks on their faces—people who saw no chance of a future. Some had spent their last dollar to be here, but tonight they all held their heads high. Their eyes followed him with the wild hope that the story of the Cinderella Man would have a happy ending.

The story of heavyweight boxer James J. Braddock—the "Cinderella Man"—is a true one. It begins in New York City in the late 1920s. The 1920s had seen good times in the United States. The rest of the world watched as taller and taller buildings were built in cities like New York. More and more Americans were buying Henry Ford's cars, and Hollywood was making movies that were seen around the world. In the country's big cities, it was a time of new fashions, new machines, and exciting new music.

President Herbert Hoover thought that the good times would never end, but he was wrong. The country was producing more than it needed, and many historians believe that this was the cause of the problem. There were still many poor people in the United States—almost half the population—and these people couldn't afford to buy new things. At the same time, the country's rich people couldn't continue to buy things they already owned. The end came suddenly, in October 1929, when the whole system crashed. The economy failed, banks closed, families around the country lost their money, and millions of people lost their jobs and their homes. In 1932, the country voted for a popular new president, Franklin Delano Roosevelt, who worked hard to solve the country's problems. There were no quick answers, though—in

1933, there were 15 million people without jobs in the country, one in every four working people—and the 1930s continued to be hard for many Americans.

The true story of Jim Braddock was similar to the story of many Americans. He made a lot of money in the 1920s as a successful boxer, and he and his family had everything they wanted. But for Braddock, too, the good times couldn't last. He lost all of his money in 1929, and he experienced bad luck in his professional life when he began to lose fights. Like many Americans, Braddock had to take any work he could find. He had to fight just to put food on the table for his family. Most people believed that his life as a professional heavyweight boxer had ended. The story of his second chance is one of the sport's greatest stories.

It was a story that the writer and boxing supporter Cliff Hollingsworth knew well. Thinking that it would make a great movie, he spoke to Jim Braddock's sons in 1994. They told him that their father had been a national hero, but that now most people hadn't heard of him. Hollingsworth wanted to change that situation so "this forgotten hero will be remembered once again."

Actor Russell Crowe became interested in making a movie of Braddock's story. Crowe, who was born in New Zealand and grew up in Australia, told how Braddock did everything possible to support his family. "I just wanted people to hear this true American story," said the actor.

Filmmaker Ron Howard learned more about the possible movie when he made *A Beautiful Mind* with Russell Crowe. Howard already knew about Braddock—when he was little, his father had told him about the fighter.

It was clear to the filmmakers that Braddock's wife and family were the most important things in his world, so they knew that the character of Jim's wife, Mae, was very important to the movie. Actress Renee Zellweger was interested in playing Mae because

Mae was a strong woman at a time when many women had no voice at all. "She's never afraid to tell Jim what's in her heart, even when it's not what he wants to hear," said Zellweger.

Before the movie could be made, Russell Crowe had a lot of work to do. After his last movie, the actor weighed 103 kilograms. Jim Braddock fought at 81 kilograms and he was taller than Crowe, so the actor had to lose weight. He did this by methods from Braddock's days—swimming, running, riding a bicycle, and climbing.

He also had to study boxing, working long hours at the punching bag and in the ring. He was helped by the most famous trainer in boxing's history, Angelo Dundee, who has worked with Sugar Ray Leonard, Mike Tyson, and the greatest champion of them all, Muhammad Ali. The trainer helped Crowe to box, and to box just like Jim Braddock. Dundee spoke of the actor's speed and skill in the ring. "Best of all, he has learned to think like a fighter," said the famous trainer.

Crowe was also not afraid of pain. He was knocked down several times and suffered loose and broken teeth; one week before filming began, his shoulder was badly hurt. When the movie was made, some of Braddock's opponents were played by real boxers, who had to learn to throw punches that didn't hurt so much. They didn't always remember! In one scene, boxer Mark Simmons hit Crowe so hard that actor Paul Giamatti, playing Braddock's manager, heard the boxing glove hit Crowe's head. Giamatti's look of shock in the film wasn't acting! "I don't know how he continued with the fight," said Giamatti.

In the end, *Cinderella Man* is not just a story about boxing. It is the story of a family who stayed together in hard times—the story of a man who fought for what he loved and believed in.

Chapter 1 A Lucky Man

Madison Square Garden, New York, November 30, 1928

There were nineteen thousand boxing supporters around the center ring in Madison Square Garden, and most were waiting for just one thing—for one fighter to murder another. Tonight they were waiting for Gerald "Tuffy" Griffiths, the "Terror from out West," to destroy New Jersey's Jim Braddock.

At the sound of the bell, Braddock stood under the hot lights and watched Griffiths rush out into the ring. Tuffy Griffiths had come to New York after winning fifty fights. He had won his last fight with a knockout in the first round. Everybody knew that he would do the same to Braddock—everybody except Braddock and his manager, Joe Gould. Gould believed in Braddock.

A sudden jab from Braddock knocked Griffiths back. The fighters started moving around the ring, throwing and blocking punches. Griffiths threw the same punches that had easily beaten his other opponents, but Braddock stayed on his feet. Blood and sweat poured into his eyes.

None of the reporters around the ring expected the New Jersey boxer to reach the end of the second round. But by round two, Braddock had timed his opponent's rushes. Within one minute, he hit Griffiths with his big punch—his right cross—and Tuffy went down. The crowd stood, shouting. But the referee had only counted to three before Griffiths was back on his feet and the fight continued.

Time stretched for Braddock now, and his opponent's slightest move seemed enormous. Braddock paid no attention to the screams of the crowd, to the pain he felt. This was his chance to finish Griffiths. He threw his big right punch again, and again Tuffy was on the floor.

"One . . . two . . . three . . . four . . ." the referee counted.

For a second time, Griffiths got to his feet. But Braddock was ready, stepping in close and throwing punch after punch. Then his right hand flew forward and found Griffiths' chin for the last time. The big fighter hit the floor again. He tried to stand, but his legs were like rubber. No more punches hit him, but he went down—and stayed down.

"And from the great state of New Jersey, by a knockout, tonight's light heavyweight winner . . . Jim Braddock!"

The crowd was back on its feet. The local boy had won! Braddock had been born in Hell's Kitchen, a poor neighborhood of New York just a stone's throw from Madison Square Garden. Braddock punched the air in celebration. He looked at the crowd, at the men in their suits and ties and the women with their fashionable haircuts and expensive clothes. It was Friday night, the world seemed to be having a party, and Jim Braddock's win was one more reason to celebrate!

Griffiths was Braddock's eighteenth knockout since his first professional fight in 1926. His twenty-seventh win. The fight organizers had had big plans for Griffiths. After this surprise win, maybe Braddock would have his chance to fight for the title of heavyweight champion. That was every boxer's dream.

Inside the ring, Joe Gould rushed out of the corner and jumped onto his boxer's back. Both men looked at the crowd and listened to its shouts. Jim smiled. He was *a winner* . . .

•

The tall boxer and his manager stepped out through the side entrance into a crowd of about a hundred well-dressed supporters.

"Just sign your name for a few of them," said Joe. "Leave them wanting more."

"Do you want to sign my name for me, too?" Jim asked his manager with a smile.

People crowded around Jim. He liked them; he liked the fact that they loved him.

"You win some, you lose some, Johnston," said Joe.

Jim looked up. His manager was talking to a big man who had come out of the same side entrance. Jimmy Johnston organized the fights at Madison Square Garden. No boxer fought there without his permission. Johnston and men like him ruled the world of boxing. Tonight Johnston had wanted Griffiths to win the fight. Braddock was supposed to be an easy win for Griffiths.

Jim touched his manager's arm. "Leave it," he said.

But Joe continued talking. "Maybe you support the wrong guys? Griffiths was heavier than my boy, and what happened? Jab, cross . . ."

"Actually, it was jab, jab, cross," said Jim. He didn't like to see Joe arguing with a man as powerful as Johnston. But the little manager had always supported Jim, and the fighter couldn't let his manager stand alone now.

"Jab, jab, cross!" repeated Joe. "And then your boy's out! So maybe no one's a *loser*? Right, Johnston?"

Loser. Jim hated that word. Some people had said that his early opponents were no good. Easy fights. Losers. So what did that make Jim? But after tonight. . . after Griffiths . . . what could they say now?

Joe Gould and Jimmy Johnston stared hard at each other. Just like inside the boxing ring, time seemed to stretch. And then Johnston turned and walked to his waiting car.

Jim shook his head. His little manager had no control over his mouth. "I'll get us a taxi," he said.

But Joe pointed to a big, shiny new car across the street. "You have to show you're doing well," he said. The manager organized his life by this belief—expensive clothes, the best restaurants, and now this car. A uniformed driver opened the back door, and the two men got in.

Through the car's windows, New York seemed alive. The city's bright lights shone and people laughed and talked as they went to shows and clubs. It was an exciting time to live in the city. Tall buildings were going up everywhere, and everybody seemed to be getting rich. Jim Braddock and Joe Gould wanted a piece of that success, too. They had even started their own taxi company.

"Let's go to a club," said Joe. "You should be seen in the right places . . ."

But Jim just said, "Home, Joe."

With a shake of his head, Joe told the driver, and the car turned toward New Jersey. This had been Jim's home since soon after his birth. His parents had moved from Ireland to New York, looking for a better life. Later, for the same reason, they had moved their family across the Hudson River to New Jersey.

Here Jim had grown up a typical American boy. By the time he stopped going to school, his older brother had started to box. One day he and Jim began to argue, and soon they were fighting. Although his brother was bigger and had much more experience, Jim didn't do badly. That's when he realized—maybe he could be a winner in the boxing ring.

Not long after this, he had first met Joe Gould in a local gym. Joe needed someone to train with one of his boxers, and he offered five dollars to the tall teenager. Jim had gone into the ring and given Gould's boxer a lesson. The manager had stayed with Jim since then, through one hundred amateur fights, and then through all his professional fights.

Now the car turned onto Jim's tree-lined street in a nice, quiet neighborhood of Newark, New Jersey's biggest city. Joe pulled some cash out of his pocket and began to count out Jim's share of the prize money.

"Do you want to come in?" asked Jim as the car stopped outside his house. "The kids would love to see you."

Joe paused. "Are you still married to the same girl?"

"I was this morning," answered Jim.

"I'll come in another time," said Joe. "And tell her I didn't charge you for the towels."

As Jim climbed out, he forced himself not to laugh. Joe Gould was afraid of nothing in the world of boxing, but he turned and ran from Jim's wife, Mae, with her hard questions about the prize money and Jim's share of it.

The front door of the house was open now, and there, in the golden light of the hall, was Mae. Her pale face was serious as she waited. From the first time he had met her, Jim had loved her. He moved toward her now, telling himself he was a lucky man to have a wife like Mae.

When Mae Braddock saw her husband, the dark cloud of worry disappeared. She could breathe again. Feel again.

Fight night was always like this for Mae. In the afternoon, Jimmy kissed her goodbye. Then she just watched the clock and hoped that he was safe. The long hours full of fear only ended when Jim came home.

She knew that men died in the ring. Not often, but it happened. And if they didn't die, they were hurt, badly. Mae didn't understand the sport. To her it was a world of pain and danger. But she loved her husband, and so she tried to support him.

Mae Theresa Fox had grown up near the Braddock family in New Jersey. She had always liked big Jim Braddock, and he loved Mae from the time he first met her. But Jim was shy, and it took him a long time to ask Mae to marry him. He said that he wanted to wait until he had enough money to buy a nice home. When he had \$30,000 from his prize money—a small fortune—he finally asked. As he waited nervously for her answer, Mae noticed the sweat on Jim's face. She couldn't stop herself from laughing. The money didn't matter to her—of course she would marry him!

Now Mae looked at her husband. She knew that Griffiths had been expected to win tonight's fight. Her eyes asked the question, and Jim's answer was a slow shake of the head. Mae looked away. She hated to see Jimmy in pain—that's why she never went to the fights—and she hated to see him like this. But then she looked up and saw Jimmy smile. He had won!

"I could kill you," said Mae, kissing her husband.

Jim's two sons ran into the hall. They jumped around their father's legs, shouting with excitement.

"Daddy, did you win?" cried four-year-old Jay.

Howard, who was only three, was just happy that Daddy was home. Jim picked the boys up and kissed them. *My little men*, he thought. His eyes met Mae's. *My little family*.

Jim told them all about the fight, acting it out punch by punch. It wasn't easy for Mae to put the boys to bed after that. When she had checked their sleeping baby girl, Rosy, she sat down to eat dinner with Jimmy.

"So did Griffiths have a big punch?" she asked.

"You could come and watch me fight," suggested Jim.

But Mae looked away. "You get punched, and it feels like *I'm* getting punched. But I'm not as strong as you . . ." She forced herself to smile. "And who wants newspaper stories about me running out from a fight again?"

Jim remembered when this had happened. His opponent had knocked him down that day, and Mae had seen it. Jim still remembered the look of fear on her face. It didn't seem to matter that Jim had won the fight in the end. After that, Mae bravely continued coming to watch Jim box. He didn't know how painful it was for her until a few fights later. Jim was having a bad night and he took a lot of punishment. Not able to watch anymore, Mae had run off before the final bell. A reporter saw her go, and the story was in the newspapers. Mae never went to a fight again.

Now she looked at her husband. "Were there any girls waiting outside after the fight?"

"Maybe," said Jim with a smile.

Mae moved around the table. She spoke in a different voice now, pretending to be one of the women. "Oh, Mr. Braddock," she said. "You're so strong. Your hands are so big."

Mae moved in close, and she wasn't joking now when she said, "I am so proud of you, Jimmy."

That night, as he got ready for bed, Jim stood in the bedroom of his beautiful home. He looked at their wedding picture. Then he took off the gold cross from around his neck and kissed it, looking at his own face in the mirror. It was the face of a lucky man. A lucky man and a winner.

Chapter 2 Hard Times

Newark, New Jersey, September 25, 1933

Jim Braddock looked through the drawers below the same mirror that had shown him the face of a lucky man. Dressing was quick these days: he just put on what Mae had washed or fixed the night before. He didn't have to kiss his gold cross for luck. He had sold it years ago. Everyone's luck had gone now—even Jim Braddock's.

Something moved outside the window, probably a rat. This was just a part of life when you lived in a single room in a dirty, crowded apartment building. Behind Jim, his three hungry children shared a bed in the cold family bedroom. Mae had hung a blanket across the room to turn one room into two.

He looked again at his and Mae's wedding picture. In the last few years they had lost their house and most of their furniture, but they would always have this. In the picture, Mae looked beautiful; Jim stood next to her, wearing a suit he didn't own now. The couple in the photo smiled, not knowing the hard future that was

ahead. But Jim liked to look at the picture every day. It reminded him of the good things in his life.

He stepped into the kitchen, where Mae was cooking breakfast. She looked different now—thinner, with dark circles under her eyes. But to Jim she was still beautiful.

"I can't find my socks," he said.

"Jim!" whispered Mae, but it was too late.

"Mom, I want to eat, too," said little Rosy, pushing through the blanket. Mae began to cut another thin piece of meat.

"Sorry," said Jim.

Rosy couldn't remember living in a big house, surrounded by nice things, with new clothes and plenty of food. The girl climbed onto her father, and Jim held her close to him. He hated seeing his children grow up like this; it was harder than any fight.

"We got a final bill," said Mae, "for the gas and electricity."

Jim's shoulders fell. He took down a jar from the shelf, where they kept their money for a "rainy day." He shook it and listened to the few coins in the jar.

"It's clearly been raining more than I thought recently," he said.

Mae picked up three dishes and put a thin piece of hot meat on each one. Jim began to cut up his daughter's food.

"I'm fighting Abe Feldman tonight," he told his wife. He didn't tell her that Feldman had lost only one fight in nineteen. Instead, he told her what he would earn—fifty dollars, more than he could earn in one whole week on the docks.

Mae couldn't hide the old fear in her eyes. Since hard times had hit their family—and the whole country—she had started to hate the ring, with its punishments and its empty promises.

"Mommy, I want some more," said Rosy.

Jim looked at Mae and Rosy with their empty plates. "Mae, I had a dream last night," he said, standing from the table. "I dreamed that I was having dinner at an expensive hotel, and I had a big, thick steak." He put on his old coat. "I had so much food,

I'm just not hungry now." He spoke more quietly to his daughter. "Can you help me? Mommy cooked this, and I don't want to hurt her feelings."

Rosy wasn't sure whether to believe him, but Jim moved the meat from his plate to hers. With wide eyes, the child immediately began to eat.

"Jimmy—" Mae began, but he silenced her with a kiss.

You can't work on an empty stomach, her eyes said to him.

Jim's answer was simple. "You're my girls."

When Jim stepped outside, he remembered that things weren't so bad for him and his family. Times were even harder for many other people. He walked past old, broken cars next to trash can fires. Those useless cars were homes now, homes to people with no jobs and no hopes.

This part of Newark was very different from Jim's old leafy neighborhood. Most of the dirty brown and gray buildings around here had broken windows and paint coming off. Most of the stores were closed, and garbage cans lay empty in the street. People threw nothing away these days.

Ten thousand factories in the New York area had been closed down. Everywhere Jim looked, he saw people without jobs. Businessmen, teachers, office workers, lawyers, bankers . . . all were looking for work. There were men in four-year-old suits, happy to clean a yard for a dollar. Others stood in line at employment offices from morning until night.

Disaster had struck on October 29, 1929. Some people called it Black Tuesday, others the Crash. It was the end of America's good times in the 1920s. The economy failed, and suddenly millions of people were out of work. At first, Jim thought that the problem wouldn't last long. But then his bank closed and his taxi company went out of business. By 1932, the Braddocks had lost every cent of Jim's boxing money.

New York wasn't a city of bright lights and happy party-goers

now. The city was filled with a gray crowd of people without hope. They stood in endless lines for soup or bread; they froze on street corners; they looked for work and found none. Hungry, empty, hopeless people.

Jim's only hope had been boxing. The prize money was less, but boxing was still popular, cheap entertainment. But, after the crash, Jim's success as a boxer had ended. In 1930, '31, '32—and now 1933—he lost more fights than he won. It was harder and harder for Gould to get him good fights.

Jim had to look for other work. With so many factories closed, he tried Newark's busy docks. Early every morning, he joined the crowd looking for work there. In the dark and the cold, they waited by the locked gate of a high fence.

At last, the foreman pulled open the gate. He looked at the tired, hungry faces of the men there. This man had the power of life or death; he could change the luck of every man here.

"I need nine men," he said.

Men began pushing forward—*Me! Pick me!*—as the foreman counted out workers. "One, two, three . . ." Jim pushed forward, too, but then: ". . . nine."

Jim closed his eyes. After all of that waiting, it had ended in less than thirty seconds. He hadn't been picked.

"I've been here since four o'clock," said a man's voice.

The man had stepped forward to complain. Jim had spoken to him once. His name was Ben and, like Jim, he had a wife and three kids to support.

The foreman began to turn away, but suddenly Ben was holding a gun and pointing it at the foreman's heart. His hand shook and his eyes were wild. "I was here first."

The foreman lifted his eyes from the gun to Ben's face. "My mistake," he said. "I need ten men."

Ben stepped through the gate. Jim wanted to look away but he couldn't. Ben had just put the gun away when several men fought

him to the ground. That was the end for Ben now. How could he help his wife and kids from prison?

Jim spent the whole day walking from place to place and looking for work, without luck. Hours later, he returned to the apartment building. His eight-year-old son, Howard, was outside. Jim gave his son a smile. How could a young boy understand that one in four working Americans had no job? An eight-year-old child didn't need to know that.

Suddenly, another child ran up to him. It was Rosy.

"Daddy, Daddy, Daddy!" she cried. "Jay stole!"

Jim carried his daughter to their apartment, where Mae was standing over their oldest son. The ten-year-old's face was red.

Jim put Rosy down. "What's all this about?"

Rosy pointed at the meat on the table. "See?" she said.

There was enough to feed the family for a whole week.

"It's from the butcher shop," said Mae. "He refuses to say a word about it. Don't you, Jay?"

"OK," said Jim to his son. "Pick it up. Let's go."

Jay looked up at his father and the message in his eyes was clear. *Don't make me do this. Can't you see that we need it?*

"Right now!" said Jim.

Then he was out of the building and marching to the butcher shop without another word. His son followed slowly behind, with the stolen food in his hand. At the butcher's, Jay had to give the meat back and apologize. Jim met the butcher's eyes. *I am not bringing up my son to be a thief.*

The butcher nodded. Father and son left the shop. As they walked, Jim was silent, giving his boy time.

At last, Jay spoke. "Marty Johnson had to go and live with his uncle. His parents didn't have enough for them to eat."

Jim turned toward his son. "You were scared," he said. "I understand that. But we don't steal. It doesn't matter what happens. Promise me."

Jay managed a nod. "I promise," he said.

"Here's *my* promise." Jim was eye to eye with his son. "We're never going to send you away, son."

The tears came pouring from the little boy's eyes. Jim pulled Jay into his arms and held him as tight as he could.

Chapter 3 An Embarrassment

Mount Vernon, New York, September 23, 1933

The dressing room was a mess. The floor was dirty and the doors were broken. The air smelled of old sweat.

"He's a slow guy," said Joe Gould. "My grandmother could beat him! It'll be an easy fight."

Joe was wearing one of his usual fine brown suits. Jim knew nobody else who hadn't been ruined by the Crash.

The manager was taping up Jim's hands before the fight. He squeezed Jim's right hand, then saw the look of pain on the fighter's face. He played with the hand, examining it carefully.

"This break needs a couple of weeks to get better," he said. "Why didn't you tell me, Jim?"

Jim didn't look up. He had fought in March, although his right hand was still hurt from a fight in January. His opponent was good, and Jim, fighting with a bad hand, had lost in four rounds. But he couldn't stop fighting because he needed the prize money for his family. He fought several more times, hurting his right hand again and again. By now he had to use drugs to control the pain. There was never enough time for it to get better before the next fight.

Joe Gould knew that it wasn't legal to let a boxer fight in this condition. If something went wrong in the ring, it could mean the end for both Joe and Jim.

"I can't get any work," said Jim quietly. "We need the money."

The little manager thought of Mae and the children. "OK," he said. "I'll tape your hand double." Gould knew that double-taping was against the rules, too. "Keep your left hand in his face and, when you can, hit him with a big right. If you finish early, I'll buy you an ice cream!"

He led the boxer past the crowd toward the ring. This crowd was very different from the one at Madison Square Garden years earlier. These people looked poorer and hungrier.

As Jim climbed into the ring, a radio reporter spoke into a microphone. "Just five years ago, Jim Braddock was thought to be ready to fight for the world heavyweight title. But he has lost ten fights in the last year."

The crowd started to shout louder when Abe Feldman walked toward the ring, punching the air.

"Now Braddock fights Feldman," continued the radio man, "a young fighter who has won seventeen times and lost just once."

Jim froze. *This* was the boxer Joe's grandmother could beat?

Feldman was the crowd's favorite. He was young and handsome, like Braddock had been years earlier when he had an unbroken nose and two pretty ears. Braddock's gloves fell to his sides.

Joe pulled Jim's gloves back up. "Jimmy, what are you going to do?"

Jim closed his eyes and everything went away—the crowd's shouts, Mae's worried looks, Ben's gun, Jay's silent tears, all the mistakes of the last four years. He opened his eyes.

"I'm going to get an ice cream!"

•

Feldman's glove hit Braddock in the face, a hard punch. Jim tried to hit back, but Feldman blocked his punches.

'Come on, Jimmy!' cried Gould from the corner. The manager was sweating almost as much as Braddock, as he jabbed the air

and shouted advice. But Braddock could only think about the pain of Feldman's punches. The younger man hit him again and again, but none of Braddock's punches seemed to hit Feldman, who danced around his opponent easily. Suddenly, Feldman threw a combination of punches that threw Braddock back onto the ropes. The crowd began to boo.

"Don't just stand there!" shouted Gould.

Braddock saw an opening in Feldman's defenses and threw a right cross. It hit the fighter's chin and knocked him back. Jim stepped in to finish his opponent, but Feldman put his head down as Braddock threw his big punch. The leather glove hit the top of Feldman's head. There was a sound of bone on bone. The pain in Braddock's right hand was terrible. He held on to Feldman as the bell announced the end of the round. The referee had to send both fighters back to their corners.

Gould quickly took Braddock's right glove off. Even under all the tape, he could see that the hand was really broken.

"I can't let you continue," he said.

Jim thought of the prize money. "I can use my left," he said.

"Don't let Feldman get too close," said Gould, quickly tying the glove back up. "Do what you can with your left."

But Braddock had never had a left-hand punch. Now he couldn't even block with his right, and his feet felt heavy and slow. Punch after punch fell on him.

Time usually slowed down for Jim in the ring, but now it was flying past. He began to throw out his left hand in wild jabs. These missed, but then one punch hit Feldman on the chin and hurt him. Again, the two boxers held on to each other. The crowd began to boo again and shout insults: "Go home!"

Braddock decided that maybe he had one more good right punch in him. He pulled his arm back and threw the punch. It hurt Feldman, but the pain was much worse for Braddock. Under the double tape, his right hand was completely broken. Feldman

hit him back, and again Braddock held on to his opponent. He almost fainted from the pain.

The angry boos from the crowd were so loud that he almost didn't hear the bell.

•

"An embarrassment! That's what it was. An embarrassment!"

Jimmy Johnston, the big fight organizer, was shouting angrily at Joe Gould, 'who was unusually quiet.

Thirty minutes earlier the referee had ended the fight, announcing that nobody was the winner because Braddock wasn't fit to continue.

"OK, OK, so he's fighting while he's hurt," said Joe. "Maybe your fighters can afford to have a month's rest between fights."

"He almost never hits his opponents any more," answered Johnston. "And now the referee has to stop the fight. A fighter like that keeps the public away. Ticket money will fall." The big man paused. "We're taking away his boxing license. Whatever Braddock was going to do in boxing, he's done it."

When Jim heard the bad news from his manager, he couldn't move, couldn't breathe. The dressing room was small and dirty, so Joe led his boxer back into the hall. The lights threw long shadows on the empty ring. Joe began taping a piece of wood to Jim's broken hand. "Until you get to the hospital."

As he taped the hand, Joe couldn't hold back the memories, all the fights and all the dreams. All the hopes that Jim Braddock would be champion one day. Now those hopes lay as broken as the fighter's hand.

Joe cleared his throat. "Jimmy . . . sometimes you just can't change things. I'm telling you . . . It's finished."

The boxer didn't jump up, shout, or scream. He was quiet for a long time. His face was wet with tears. "Get me one more fight, Joe," said the fighter. "We're down to our last dollar."

"I . . . I'm sorry, Jimmy."

After all they had been through together, Joe really was sorry. They had stayed the best of friends through good times and bad. Now it really was the end. Tonight. This was goodbye.

Jim didn't even look up as his manager walked away, leaving him on the seats beside the dark ring. Alone.

Chapter 4 A New Life

"Oh, dear God . . ."

Jim knew that this was the last time he would see this look on Mae's face after a fight. "I don't have the money," he said, too tired to find the words to make it easier. "They refused to pay me, took away my license. They said that I'm finished as a boxer."

The fear in Mae's eyes turned to anger. She didn't care about boxing licenses or fight rules. She only cared about her husband.

"Jimmy, what happened to your hand?"

"It's broken in three places."

Mae wasn't thinking about boxing now. "If you can't work, we won't be able to pay the bills, buy food . . . We'll have to send the children to stay with my sister."

"Mae, I can still work," Jim said. "Get the black shoe polish from the cupboard. Nobody will give me a job if they see this cast on my hand, so we'll cover it up."

Mae saw it in her husband's eyes then—Jim Braddock wasn't going to be beaten. "I'll cut your coat so you can put it on over the cast," she said, opening the shoe polish and spreading it on the white cast. "Now we just need a piece of steak for your face, Jim Braddock!" she laughed.

Six-year-old Rosy's face appeared around the blanket. Jim smiled at her, deciding, not for the first time, that he was a lucky man to have Mae as his wife.

•

It was early morning and Jim was standing outside the familiar locked gate at Newark docks. As the sun appeared in the east, the foreman, Jake, walked up. Jim put his broken hand behind him. The doctor had said it would be useless for months.

"One, two, three . . ." As usual, Jake walked along the group, pointing to the workers he wanted. "... five, six, seven . . ." Jim stood tall. ". . . eight. . ." Jake's eyes fell on Jim, then the foreman pointed at him: "Nine."

A win! Jim stepped forward, knowing that he was one of the lucky few who had work that day.

Minutes later, Jim was meeting his new partner. The young, handsome man introduced himself as Mike Wilson.

"What happened to you?" he asked Jim, staring at the black and blue marks on his face.

"I got into a fight," Jim told the man.

Together the two men had to move a mountain of sacks from one area to another. It took two strong men to lift each sack, using big hooks to pick the sacks up.

Jim found the work very difficult. He had never really used his left hand for anything. It was really hard using the hook with it, while trying to hide the cast on his right hand.

"There was a fighter called Jim Braddock," said Mike. "I listened to his fights on the radio. There's another fighter using the name now, but this guy's no good."

Jim saw the smile on Mike's face. He almost laughed himself, but then the sack fell from the hook in his hand.

Mike saw Jim's cast. "This isn't going to work," he said. "You can't do this job with a bad hand, and you can't slow me down. I need this job."

Jim gave his partner a quick look. "Listen, I can do this."

Suddenly, a new voice shouted, "What's happening here?" It was the foreman, and he was staring at Jim's bad hand.

Instead of trying to explain, Jim sank the hook back into the sack with his left hand. Then he waited, unable to do anything until his partner moved. After a few terrible seconds, Mike sunk the hook into his end of the sack. The two men lifted the heavy sack together and carried it across the dock. Then they moved for another sack, then another, and another.

Jake, the foreman, stood there with arms crossed, watching every move. Finally, he walked away

Jim lifted his face to Mike. "Thanks," he said.

•

It was raining hard, but Mae didn't move. Her place in this soup line was too valuable. Hundreds of people were ahead of her, but a lot were behind her, too. They were all waiting for free soup and bread from the truck at the head of the line. Mae held Rosy in her arms. The two boys ran around playing.

"You need to stand for a few minutes, Rosy," said Mae.

"I don't want to!" cried Rosy. "The sidewalk's wet!"

"Who's making all this noise?"

Immediately, Rosy's crying stopped. Her father appeared beside her, big and strong and with a smile on his face for her.

As he lifted Rosy, Jim told Mae, "I got a job at the docks."

Mae noticed something inside Jim's coat. His boxing shoes. She wasn't surprised to see them. A few boxing organizers in expensive suits couldn't stop her husband from fighting, even if they had taken away his license.

"Are you training today?" she asked him.

"I was thinking of selling them," said Jim. "Then we can pay the grocer by the end of the week."

Mae didn't know what to say. At last she said, "Don't take less than a dollar, Jim."

He saw the tears in her eyes. "Go home. I'll stand in line."

She handed him the empty pot and took the children home. Jim's eyes followed them, and then he looked forward again, turning his collar up against the wind. The soup truck seemed far, far away, but Jim had become good at waiting.

Hours later, familiar sounds greeted Jim's ears—jump ropes hitting the wooden floors, leather gloves hitting punching bags. This was the gym that Jim had trained in for years. It was the place where he had first met Joe Gould. Even now, part of him wanted to get into the ring and fight.

As he entered the gym, the usual smell of leather and sweat hit him. He looked at all the boxers training hard.

"Jimmy!" said a friendly voice. "Have you come to train?"

It was Joe Jeannette, the owner of the gym. The old fighter had never been a champion, but he had always been a hero to Jim. A great boxer with quick hands and a knockout punch, Jeannette had been one of the best heavyweights in the country. But he was a black man, and few white boxers agreed to fight him. Jeannette never had the chance to fight for the title. But Jeannette couldn't stay away from the fight game. He had become a referee, and he had opened this gym. He was never too busy to give advice to a young boxer.

Jim tried to return Jeannette's smile, but he couldn't. He put the soup pot down and pulled his boxing shoes out of his coat.

A few minutes later, Joe Gould stepped onto the gym floor. He was here to see a new boxer, not Jim Braddock. Joe watched as Jim handed his boxing shoes to a young, black boxer, who paid Jim ten cents. Then Jim picked up his soup and bread and turned toward the front entrance.

Joe Jeannette looked up and saw the manager standing at the back of the gym. His eyes held a question for Joe, but Joe just shook his head and stepped behind the door.

It's better for both of us if Jim doesn't see me, Joe thought.

Chapter 5 Broken Promises

Jim sat at the kitchen table reading out President Franklin Delano Roosevelt's speech from the newspaper. He tried to find hope in the President's words. According to Roosevelt, there was only one thing for Americans to fear—"fear itself." Mae counted out coins from the rainy-day jar.

Jim's week had become an unending string of gray mornings and sweaty afternoons of hard work at the docks. Jim and Mike worked together every day, and Jim did all the work with his left hand. In the evenings, he had another job—more long, hard work with only his left hand. Mae was usually asleep on the sofa by the time Jim got home at night.

That night she was woken by the sound of coins dropping into the jar. She saw her husband walk toward their bed.

Jim looked down at the clean, white sheets. He wanted nothing more than to fall into them, but then he looked down at his own dirty, sweaty body, and lay down on the floor.

"Jimmy," Mae whispered. "We can wash the sheets."

But Jim was already asleep. Mae pulled the covers off the bed and lay down on the floor, beside her husband.

•

The winter of 1933—34 was one of the coldest in recent memory. One morning, Mae and Rosy walked with the boys to school. They were walking back down the snowy street when Mae saw a shiny new car outside their building.

"Mommy, who's the man at our house?" asked Rosy.

Mae walked up to the man, whose uniform showed that he was the gas and electricity man. "Can I help you, sir?"

"I'm sorry, ma'am. You haven't paid the bills, and I have to cut your electricity off."

The man was in his thirties, but his eyes looked older.

"You can't," said Mae. "We have kids. *Please.*"

"If I don't, I'll lose my job," said the man sadly.

Work at the docks finished early that day. Jim and his work partner Mike started walking around local towns, looking for work. There was none anywhere that day. Tired and cold, they started for home.

"We have until tomorrow," cried a loud voice.

Jim's steps slowed. Across the street, a young man was arguing with two city police officers. His wife stood beside him, fighting back tears. The couple's furniture was on the sidewalk all around them. The officers were moving them from their apartment.

The two officers wore fine, new uniforms. The younger of the two was polite. The older man had heard every excuse before, and he was tired of listening.

Jim watched as the young husband tried to pull a piece of paper out of the officer's hand.

"This says we have another day," he cried.

"Come on," said Mike, pulling Jim's arm. But Jim was already moving across the street and Mike went with him.

"You can't do this," the young woman was saying. "We'll never get back in."

Her husband jumped in front of the officers as they moved to fit a new lock to the building's front door. "Please, I'm starting a factory job next week . . ."

The officers pushed him away and put the lock on.

"Excuse me," said Mike politely, then louder: "Excuse me!" The officers stared at him. "Please can I have a look at that notice? The law says that I'm allowed to." He stepped forward. "Let me just have a look at the date on it. If everything's OK with it, we'll just walk away."

"Or else what?" demanded the younger officer. The older officer was looking at Jim.

Mike smiled. "You guys know Jim Braddock, don't you?"

The older officer's attitude changed immediately. "I've seen you fight, Jim," he said.

Mike looked down at the document in the older man's hand. "What do you say, guys? Mistakes happen all the time."

The officer nodded. "Maybe we got our days mixed up," he said, removing the lock from the door.

As the two officers walked away, Mike and Jim began to help the couple move their furniture back inside.

"So you're a lawyer?" asked Jim.

Mike shook his head. "A banker, but I hired enough lawyers to have a good idea of the law. It doesn't matter now . . . I lost it all in '29." He looked Jim in the eyes. "You know, there are people living in Central Park. The government has failed us. We need to organize. Fight back."

Jim shook his head. "Fight what? Bad luck? You have to trust that the government will solve things in the end. I like what President Roosevelt says."

"Forget Roosevelt!" shouted Mike. "He hasn't given me my house back yet!"

Jim looked in surprise at the terrible anger in his friend's eyes.

•

The blanket didn't hang in the middle of the room. Now the three children had it around them, as they lay in bed. Jim could see their breath in the cold air. Every piece of clothing in the apartment was piled on top of them.

He crossed the room and threw a piece of a wooden sign onto the fire in the stove. Mae emptied the rainy-day jar onto the table.. She began to push the coins around.

"Six dollars and seventy cents," said Jim, joining his wife. "How much would it cost to turn the electricity back on?"

Thirty-three dollars and ten cents," whispered Mae.

If I work twenty-six hours out of every twenty-four, it still

won't be enough." Jim seemed suddenly weaker. He looked at Mae. "Think of all the other guys who wanted to marry you."

"What happened to those guys?" joked Mae, then she squeezed his hand. "I married the guy I love."

A wet cough from across the room interrupted them. "It's Howard," said Mae sadly. "He's been sick since this afternoon."

When Mae woke up the next morning, Jim had already gone out into the terrible cold. She spent the morning trying to keep the children warm, burning pieces of wood they had taken from signs in the street. Howard lay close to the stove, his face red with fever. Fighting back the tears, his mother held a glass of water to his lips. The boy was getting sicker.

Not wanting her children to see her cry, Mae rushed out the door and stood in the snow. Bitter tears ran down her face.

She cared only about keeping this family together. Jim was killing himself trying to do this, but it wasn't working. Now they had lost their heat and electric power. Mae knew what she had to do. She rushed inside to dress her children warmly for the trip across the river to New York City.

•

As Jim stepped through the door, the apartment was as cold as the air outside. He met silence. No little bodies ran to him with open arms. By the stove, Mae sat alone, staring into the dying flames. She couldn't meet his eyes.

"Howard was getting worse," she explained. "Then Rosy started to get sick."

"Where are they, Mae?"

"The boys are at my father's house. Rosy's going to stay with my sister. We can't keep them warm, Jim."

Jim's emotions were almost too strong for words—fear, sadness, anger. He pointed a finger at Mae. "You don't decide what happens to our children without me."

Mae stood and held his arms. "Jimmy, if they get really sick, we don't have the money for a doctor."

"If you send them away, this has all been for nothing," he said angrily. "It means that we lost." He shook Mae's arms off. "I made a promise to Jay, do you understand? I promised that we would never send him away."

Without another word, he turned and walked across the freezing room and out of the door.

Later that afternoon, he stood at the wooden counter of the Newark relief office. An unsmiling woman counted out twelve dollars and eighty cents, which she placed in a white envelope. Jim's hand shook as he signed for the money, trying not to blame himself for what he had done. Ashamed, he put the envelope into his pocket.

He pushed his way through the unhappy crowd. They were lawyers and dock workers, teachers and factory workers. Bankers and builders. Now, unable to earn money themselves, they were here to receive money from the state. Some were so ashamed that, like Jim, they looked only at the floor. Others looked straight ahead with empty stares.

After Jim crossed the river to Manhattan, he walked past all the homeless people in the city who seemed to have no hope. The story was the same everywhere: *No work. No money.*

At last, Jim reached the streets around Madison Square Garden. There were no bright lights now, no people in expensive clothes waiting outside. Instead, homeless people searched for anything they could use.

Jim went to the familiar side door. The sign for the next fight showed two boxers standing with gloves up. Jim remembered when his picture had been on signs like this. He remembered the fight with Tuffy Griffiths, the dream of that night when the future looked bright for Jim Braddock.

But then another, less happy memory came to mind—the fight

against Tommy Loughran. It was July 1929—just four months before the Crash. Jim was fighting for the title of light heavyweight champion, but it was the fight that turned Braddock into a boxer of "failed promise."

The New York crowd had wanted Braddock to win, and the fight had started well, too. But things changed in the second round. Loughran began to dance around the ring, dodging Braddock's punches easily. He had discovered Braddock's biggest weakness—no left-hand punch.

In the rest of the fight, Braddock had hit the champion with a few good punches, but it wasn't enough. The judges all decided that Loughran was the winner. The newspapers weren't kind to Braddock, who had looked slow in the last three rounds. His dream of winning the title seemed to be at an end.

Now, years later, Jim stood in the shadows in Madison Square Garden and said the same words that he had said after the Loughran fight: "I don't know what went wrong."

He opened the side door and started up the stairs. The climb to the Madison Square Garden boxing club was the hardest of his life. The club was a place where the rich money-makers of New York's boxing world could relax and do business. It wasn't high above street level, but it was like another world.

At first, nobody noticed as Jim Braddock walked into the smoky room. He went up to two men in the center of the room.

"Mr. Allen . . . Phil. . ."

The men looked up at the fighter. Others noticed and conversations around the room died. Jim cleared his throat.

"I'm here because we can't afford to pay the heating bills. We had to send our kids away . . . I just need enough money to get my children back." Jim took off his hat and stretched it out.

The whole room was silent now. Mr. Allen put his hand in his pocket. "Sure, Jim." He placed a few coins into Jim's hat.

"Thank you," replied Jim. Then he offered his hat to the others

around the room. Everybody gave some money—even Jimmy Johnston, the man who had taken away Jim's license.

Finally, Jim stopped in front of Joe Gould. "I'm sorry, Joe," he told his old manager.

"What do you have to be sorry about, Jim?" said Joe. "How much more do you need?"

"One dollar and fifty cents, I think," whispered Jim. Joe placed the exact amount in Jim's hat.

When Jim left the club, it was dark outside and streetlights lit the icy sidewalks. Jim walked past a store that had gone out of business. His face looked back at him from the dark glass of the store window. He had seen that look before. It was on the face of the man in his old suit selling apples on the street corner. It was on the face of the banker waiting in line for hours at the Newark relief office.

Jim had never understood how a proud man could sink so low. Now, with the money in his pocket to get his children back, Jim knew. He finally understood.

•

The next night, Mae opened the apartment door and turned on the electric light. Jay and Howard ran inside, followed by Jim, who was carrying the sleeping Rosy.

Jim was happy to see his family together and home again, but he felt other emotions, too. He knew now how easily their world could be destroyed.

He couldn't sleep that night. When the sun finally appeared, he got up and dressed silently. Before he left for another long day of work, he stood at the door and looked at his family. A boxer entered the ring alone. If he was knocked down, he alone could stand up and continue fighting. Jim was alone now, as he left the house and went looking for work.

Chapter 6 One Fight Only

Spring had come to Newark at last, and the Braddock family had joined other families at the local church. Once a month the priest, Father Rorick, organized a birthday party for all the children whose parents couldn't afford a party.

Jim and Mae watched as their children joined all the others around a large wooden table with two big cakes. Everybody starting singing, "Happy birthday to you . . . Happy birthday to you . . ."

Jim put his hand around Mae, happy that the cast was off at last. When it was time to sing the names, the different families all sang a different name.

"Happy birthday, dear Jay," sang the Braddocks. "Happy birthday to you!"

Howard pulled his father's arm. "It was better when we had our own cake," he said.

Father Rorick heard him. "Do you know I boxed your father a long time ago?"

Howard couldn't believe it. He looked at his father in surprise. "You hit Father Rorick?"

"As often as possible," said Jim with a big smile.

Mae Braddock joined the two men. She looked worried. "Jimmy . . ." She looked across the road. Mike, Jim's work partner at the docks, was sitting at the end of a long table. His wife, Sara, held their baby daughter in her arms and she was shouting at Mike.

"You're always trying to fix the world!" she shouted. "Why don't you fix your own family? What kind of father are you? Too proud to let people know that our daughter can't have her own birthday cake . . ."

Mike stared back angrily. "Are you joking, Sara?"

Everybody watched the argument. Even the children at the party stopped playing.

Jim walked over and separated the angry couple. "Hey, where's the referee?" he asked.

"This is between husband and wife, Jim," Mike said angrily.

"How can you call yourself that?" cried Sara.

Mike jumped up angrily, and Jim stopped him with a strong hand in the middle of his chest.

"Calm down, Mike," he said. "Have a rest."

But Mike couldn't calm down now. He pushed Jim.

"There's no need for this," said the boxer.

"Jim Braddock, big fighter . . ." said Mike, and he threw a punch at his work partner.

Jim knocked it away and then held Mike's arm. "Mike, I don't want to fight you," he said.

"You couldn't do it in the ring . . ." said Mike angrily.

He rushed at Jim again. Jim pushed him to the side and Mike fell, hitting his head on the sidewalk.

"Jim, no!" screamed Sara.

As Mike got to his feet, blood ran down his face. Sara went up to him, still holding their baby. Mike pushed her away.

"Leave me alone," he said to her and Jim. He turned and ran down the street.

When he had gone, Sara turned to Jim. Tears poured down her face as she cried, "He wasn't going to hit me, Jim!"

Sara began to chase her husband down the street. Jim looked up at Mae, who had tears in her eyes, too.

"Why was it so hard just to come over for cake?" she asked.

"Maybe he just needed a little time," said Jim angrily. "It's not always easy . . . Maybe he just needed a little time!"

Mae shook her finger at him. "Not at me, James Braddock!" she cried. "Do you hear? I know it's hard. But don't get mad at me!"

•

Jim returned from work one afternoon and found his children playing in front of the apartment building.

Rosy looked up at him. "Teach me how to fight," she said.

"I can't," said Jim. "I'll get in trouble with Mommy."

Rosy just looked at her father with the same stare that Mae had. Jim couldn't say no to that look.

"OK," he said. "It's all about how you hold your body. Put your right hand here and your left here . . ." Jim positioned her until she was standing like a little boxer. Then she threw a punch, which Jim caught in his big hand.

"Look at that!" he cried. "You have a better jab than I did!"

As he and Rosy laughed, a familiar car stopped outside the building.

"You're a brave man," called Joe Gould.

Jim smiled. "Not really. Mae's at the store."

Rosy, who wasn't yet finished with her boxing lesson, threw another punch. It hit Jim right on the chin.

"OK, Rosy," he said. "Good punch. Now go and box shadows while I talk to Uncle Joe."

Jim looked at the manager's fine, new suit. "Still looking fashionable, I see," he said.

"You have to show you're doing well," answered Joe. He gave Jim a friendly punch on the arm. "Good to see you, Jimmy." Then: "I've got you a fight."

Jim wasn't sure. "What about my boxing license?"

"The organizers will let you fight one time only," said Joe.

Jim asked the most important question: "How much?"

"Two hundred and fifty dollars," Joe replied. "You're on the big show at the Madison Square Garden Bowl in Long Island City . . ." He paused. ". . . tomorrow night."

Jim turned and walked away. He couldn't believe that his old friend and partner would play a joke like this on him.

Joe chased after him. "You fight Corn Griffin, Jimmy . . . the number two heavyweight in the world. He needs a fight before he boxes for the title."

Jim's eyes were dangerous. "Joe, this isn't funny."

"No one's trying to be kind to you. Griffin's opponent got cut and can't fight. They needed someone they could throw in the ring immediately. Nobody will take a fight against Griffin without training, so . . ." Joe looked away. "I . . . told them that Griffin could knock out a guy who has never been knocked out before . . . You're meat, Jimmy . . . They just need somebody to stand in that ring and be knocked out."

Finally, Jim smiled and put a hand on Joe's shoulder. Then he looked his manager in the eye. "Joe. For two hundred and fifty dollars, I'd fight your wife."

When Mae got home later, she wasn't happy about the news. Jim talked more—about how it was only one fight, about how long he would have to work at the docks for so much money.

In the end, Mae told Jim to take the fight. But that night she sat on the sofa in the dark and watched her sleeping husband through eyes red from crying.

•

The next morning, the three children were outside early, but they didn't go out to play. They walked to the local butcher shop. Rosy knocked on the window.

Sam, the butcher, looked down at the three children. "We're closed today." His eye fell on Jay, remembering the time when the boy had stolen from his shop. "Well, look who's here. Shall I lock everything up?"

Jay's face was red, but he bravely stood by his sister, who walked up to the counter.

"I need a piece of meat, please, sir," she said. "Steak."

"Do you have any money?"

Rosy shook her head and the look in Sam's eyes became softer.

"I can't just give the meat away."

"It's not for me . . . It's for my dad," Rosy replied. "He needs it to win a boxing fight."

Chapter 7 Back in the Ring

Long Island City, New York, June 14, 1934

Jim's name wasn't even on the sign, but he didn't care. Two hundred and fifty dollars and the chance to punch something real were the only things on his mind.

Joe Gould didn't know what to think about the fight. The manager had tried to get Braddock back in the ring since the time Jim had walked around the boxing club with his hat in his hand. Joe had pushed his way into Jimmy Johnston's office again and again, trying to get Jim a fight.

He had been outside Johnston's office when the fight organizer got the bad news about Griffin's opponent, just two days before the big fight. This left Johnston with a problem. Griffin was a promising young star in the boxing world, and Johnston wanted to get the New York sports world interested in him. The young Southern boxer needed to beat a fighter in the city who had once been a big name. Now it seemed that Jim Braddock was the right choice—especially as Braddock's manager was waiting outside Johnston's office.

Joe had accepted the offer, but now, on fight night, he was worried. He knew that Jim hadn't fought in over a year. Except for today, he hadn't trained in a long time. He had even sold his boxing gloves and shoes. Joe had to borrow some so that his boxer could fight.

As the manager bent to tie up his boxing shoes, Jim smiled. "We both know what this is, Joe. It's a chance for me to earn some money for my family. And it's a chance to say goodbye to boxing in a big fight in front of a big crowd."

Suddenly, there was a loud noise from Jim's stomach.

"What was that?" cried Joe.

"We got to the soup line too late this morning," said Jim. "The food was all gone."

Joe jumped to his feet. "How are you going to fight with an empty stomach?" he shouted. He ran from the room and appeared a few minutes later with a bowl of thick meat soup in his hand. "Eat fast," he said.

"Where's the spoon?" asked Jim. He began to put one hand into the bowl.

"Stop!" cried Joe. "I don't have time to tape your hands again. I'll find a spoon!"

Joe rushed out again, but Jim couldn't wait. He pushed his face into the bowl and began eating. He didn't notice the changing room door opening.

"I don't believe it! Am I seeing a ghost?" said a voice. Jim looked up, with food on his chin. A young man at the door was giving Jim an unpleasant smile. "Isn't that James J. Braddock? When I saw the name, I thought it *must* be a different guy." The man stepped into the room and took out a reporter's notebook. "How's your right hand now, Jim?"

Jim's eyes narrowed as he recognized the reporter. He said the man's name: "Sporty Lewis."

Jim remembered what Lewis had written about his fight with Tommy Loughran. He repeated the reporter's words to himself: "Loughran destroyed the unskilled New Jersey fighter. The fight was a funeral with the body still breathing."

Lewis saw the look in Jim's eyes and stopped smiling. "I don't fight the fights, Braddock. I just write about them."

Jim stepped up to Sporty, toe to toe and eye to eye. "Save that garbage for your readers," he said.

Suddenly, the door opened and an official pointed at Jim. "It's time," he said.

Jim left the room, keeping his eyes on Sporty Lewis's. Sporty stared after him, pale and shaken.

"That guy," he said to the official. "What a loser!"

Minutes later, Sporty was back in his seat by the side of the boxing ring. A young reporter next to him asked, "Who's Jim Braddock?"

"Get your pencil out, kid," Sporty Lewis said. "I have your story for you: 'The walk from the changing room to the ring was the only time tonight that Jim Braddock was seen on his feet.' "

•

"In this corner, Corn Griffin!"

Griffin jumped to the center of the ring and lifted his thick arms above his head. The tall young boxer wore a confident smile on his face. He was young and powerful, a natural heavyweight with long arms and a big punch.

"And in this corner . . . from New Jersey . . . Jim Braddock!"

The crowd were silent.

When the bell rang, Griffin came out punching hard and fast. Braddock danced and dodged, doing everything possible to keep away from Corn's powerful punches. After thirty seconds, Braddock decided that this fight was a bad idea. His opponent had trained hard and was ready to fight. He timed his jabs and punches to Braddock's body perfectly. Jim's only goal now was to finish the fight without getting hurt. He had to be able to work at the docks the next day.

Suddenly, a big left-hand punch from Griffin hit Braddock on the side of the head. He went down. As he lay there, the clocks seemed to stop.

"Braddock's down!" cried the announcer over the crowd's boos.

"One . . . two . . . three . . ." counted the referee. Braddock tried to get to his feet. "Four . . . five . . . six . . ."

Braddock was on one knee, but the referee continued counting.

"Get up and use your left!" Gould called to his fighter.

Finally, Braddock stood. The referee walked over to him and checked his eyes and the cut in his mouth.

"It's finished, Braddock," he said.

Braddock looked across the ring at his opponent and joked, "He doesn't look so bad." But the referee began to lift his hand to end the fight. Jim held his arm with two gloved hands. "Please. Let me fight."

The referee paused, looking hard at Jim, and then he stepped to the side. The fight could continue!

Griffin was waiting to continue his attack. Braddock answered one punch with a left-hand jab. It didn't hurt Griffin, but Jim was surprised that he could throw a left-hand punch at all.

In the second round, Griffin continued to chase Braddock around the ring. The young fighter wanted to win by a knockout, and Jim had to keep moving to dodge Corn's punches.

At the end of the round, Jim sat heavily in his corner. Joe poured water in the fighter's mouth. When it ran out again into the waiting bucket, it was pink with blood. Jim hardly heard his manager's words, though they were screamed into his face.

"He's half a step behind you!" shouted Joe. "Move to the side and see what happens. Hit him with two jabs and then the big punch."

The bell rang for the third round. Braddock moved out of his corner slowly; Griffin came out punching. Remembering Gould's advice, Braddock moved his shoulders to one side. Griffin didn't see the move and Braddock hit him with a right that sent Griffin to the floor. The referee started counting.

"That's it!" screamed Gould. The little manager started to dance and throw punches in the air.

"Three . . ." The referee's count continued.

Joe's eyes, shining with happiness and surprise, met Jim's. "Where have you been, Jimmy Braddock?"

Griffin was back on his feet, but now Jim was the one moving with confidence. Braddock rushed forward, throwing punch after punch.

Gould was screaming. "That's it! Send him home. Send him back South or wherever he comes from!"

The punches didn't stop. They fell like rain on the soup line, like snow on the Newark docks. Finally, Braddock delivered a hard right punch and stepped away. The crowd just watched as Griffin fell forward. He landed on the floor and stayed there.

In the silence that followed, Jim saw Sporty Lewis next to the ring. The reporter's eyes were big with surprise. The next second, the crowd went wild.

"I can't believe it!" the radio announcer was saying. "Corn Griffin, the number two challenger for the heavyweight title, has been knocked out by Jim Braddock in the third round!"

•

Before he left the dressing room with Joe Gould, Jim finished the bowl of food.

"Imagine what I could do if I had steak," he joked.

On their way out, they paused to watch the end of the evening's main event. The heavyweight champion of the world, Primo Carnera, was defending his title against a strong, young boxer called Max Baer. Baer's punch was so powerful that he had once killed a man in the ring. This was the fight the crowd had really come to see.

In the last round of the fight, Max Baer's powerful punches were falling on Camera without end. Carnera fell to the floor.

"Imagine a punch like that hitting you," Joe said.

Camera was an enormous man, but Baer was much faster. All night he had danced and dodged Camera's fists. Now, Camera was bloody and beaten as he got to his feet, holding the rope with one glove. Baer just laughed at the defending champion, knocking away his weak punches easily.

"Primo Camera has been knocked down eleven times!" the radio announcer was saying. "And Max Baer looks sure that he will be the next champion!"

Camera moved his tired body toward his opponent for a final attack. The challenger waited patiently with an ugly smile on his handsome face. When Camera reached the center of the ring, Baer decided to end the fight, throwing punch after punch at the champion. It was so terrible that even Joe couldn't watch.

Chapter 8 A Second Chance

Jim stepped out of the car in front of his apartment house.

"Are you sure you won't come in and say hello?" he asked.

"Are you still married to the same girl?" asked Joe.

Jim gave the usual answer. "I was the last time I looked."

Joe smiled. "Good night, Jimmy."

The car drove off, and Jim stood outside the building. The Braddocks had sold their radio, so Mae and the kids didn't know the result of tonight's fight.

The door opened and Jay, Howard, and Rosy looked up at him with hopeful faces. Mae stood silently.

"I won," he said.

The children screamed and rushed toward him. Rosy pulled on his arm. "Daddy, Daddy, you have to see what I got you!" She ran to the ice box. "Put it on your eyes," she said, pushing a thick steak into her father's hands.

Jim looked at the meat. "Where did you get this?"

"They all went to the butcher shop," said Mae. "I tried to take it back, but the butcher says he *gave* it to her."

"It's a steak," said Rosy. "It'll fix your face."

Jim held the thick steak up. He could almost smell it, hear it cooking. He went down on his knees to speak to his daughter—fighter to fighter. "Rosy, we have to eat this."

But Rosy shouted, "No! You have to put it on your face."

Jim knew that it was useless to argue. He lay back and placed the cool steak across his eyes. He waited a few seconds, and then lifted one edge of the meat.

Jay turned to his mother. "Do the announcer's voice, Mom."

"Come on, Mae," said Jim with a smile. "Do the announcer."

Mae's voice became loud. "Introducing the holder of the amateur title for light heavyweight and heavyweight. . . from New Jersey . . . the future heavyweight champion of the world . . . James J. Braddock."

These last words were shouted. The kids went wild, laughing and jumping around the room. Jim took the steak from his face.

"This really worked," he told his daughter. "Let's eat!"

He crossed to the stove and started cooking the meat. Soon the sound and the delicious smell filled the apartment.

"Jim," Mae whispered. "Is it really just one fight, or are they letting you back in?"

Jim kissed her head. "It was just the one fight."

Relief swept through Mae. As she went to the stove to get the steak, she said silent thanks that her husband would never step inside the ring again.

•

The early morning walk to the docks was the same as usual, but Jim felt different. His body ached, but his steps were quicker than they had been in months.

He joined the group of men at the fence. Finally, the foreman Jake appeared and began pointing to men.

"Six, seven, eight. . ." Jake's eyes passed Jim, then returned to him. The foreman said Jim's name and everybody turned to look. "Nine."

Jim closed his eyes in relief. As he passed through the gate, Jake said to him, "I listened to the fight last night." He took out his newspaper. Jim's eyes ran over the words:

BRADDOCK KNOCKOUT OVER GRIFFIN IN 3

Jim shook his head, not believing it. A few men crowded round to hear what he had to say. They seemed surprised that he had come to work today.

"It was one night only," explained Jim. "My share was a hundred and twenty five dollars. We had bills of one hundred and twenty to pay. That left me with five dollars."

Jake laughed. "That makes you a rich man." Then he said seriously, "Good fight."

Jim could see that these men around him, with their old clothes and tired faces, had found hope watching him fight. He had fought something real, something he could see—they all wished for that chance.

He joined his partner, Mike. Words weren't necessary. The two picked up their hooks and began to work, moving the heavy sacks.

"Why didn't you tell me you were going to win again?" said Mike. "I didn't put any money on you."

Mike smiled, but it wasn't the smile Jim remembered. It was tired. Less happy.

"Come on," Mike said. "Talk me through that last round."

Jim started describing the events of the last round again. Since the cast had come off his arm, he worked with both hands. Without thinking, he moved the hook to his left hand and continued working with smooth, strong movements.

A week later, Mae was walking back from the stores with Rosy when she saw a shiny new car drive away from their apartment house. Joe Gould's car.

She found Jim standing in the yard behind the building. He looked so happy, so handsome and confident in the sun, with his square chin and his bright eyes up to the blue sky. Then he turned and Mae felt her heart stop. She saw it in his eyes—the old excitement.

"Joe was here," said Jim. "He thinks they'll let me box again."

It was hard for Mae to speak. "You said it was one fight."

"It's my chance, Mae, to make you and the kids proud."

Mae fought to control her fear and anger. "I *am* proud . . . and grateful. But what would we do if something bad happened to you? Something worse than a broken hand, so you couldn't work?"

She couldn't even tell her worst fear: *What will happen if you're killed?*

"What would happen to us?" demanded Mae. "To the children? We're hardly managing now."

Jim shook his head sadly. He waved a hand at the broken building, the empty yard. Couldn't she see? He was already killing himself—and for what? A few coins at the end of a long day's work? "I have to do better than I'm doing," he replied.

Mae stepped closer. "Things are better now. Please, Jim . . ."

He wanted to take her in his arms, but he stopped himself. He had to think about the family's future. The strength was clear in his voice. "I can still take a few punches. At least in the ring you know who's hitting you."

Mae felt helpless as she watched him walk to the building's dark back door. *This isn't over, James Braddock*, she promised.

The next morning Jim left early for the gym. Mae left the apartment house, too. She took the kids to her sister's house, and then she crossed the Hudson River to New York City.

She was going to the small part of the city known as the Upper East Side. It was an area of beautiful houses, expensive apartment buildings, and fine hotels. Some of the richest people in the country lived on the blocks along the city's Central Park.

Two streets away, the buildings weren't quite so beautiful, but they were still home to wealthy people. In front of each apartment building, a uniformed doorman stood guard.

When she reached the tall building, she looked up, trying to guess how many floors it had. She went through the beautiful entrance hall to the elevator. On the fifteenth floor, she moved down the line of doors.

She knocked on one and called politely, "Open the door, Joe." There was no answer. She tried again, and again, but nobody came to the door. "Joe, open this door now!" Mae shouted. "You're not going to hide in your expensive apartment while you turn my husband into a punching bag. I won't let you get him hurt again!"

The door opened. "You'd better come in," said Joe Gould.

As she pushed past him, Mae's anger died. She had expected the manager's home to be beautiful. But she looked around now at a completely empty apartment.

Minutes later, she sat on a camping chair, drinking tea with Joe and his wife Lucille. She hadn't expected this friendly welcome.

"Sorry," said Joe, pointing to the door. "People have to think you're doing well."

"I thought. . ." said Mae.

"That's the plan," said Joe, touching his fine brown suit. "Show people you're doing well, even if you're not. We sold the last of the furniture last week," he continued, "so Jimmy could train."

"Why?" Mae asked.

"Sometimes you see something in a fighter, something to hope for," answered Joe. "Jimmy's what I hope for."

Mae shook her head. "This is crazy. You don't even know if you can get him a fight, do you?"

"I'll get him a fight," Joe said, "if it's the last thing I do."

Chapter 9 Not the Same Guy

The gym owner, Joe Jeannette, looked pleased. "You've been training, Jimmy."

"I've been working, Joe. Not training."

"Show me what work you did."

"I was lifting sacks at the dock," explained Jim. "We used a hook, like this." He showed the movement.

"That's the perfect punching exercise," said Jeannette. "You've been getting a powerful left hand, and you didn't even know it."

In the next few weeks, Braddock trained hard. After all those months of hard work, it was like a vacation to train with Jeannette. But the trainer pushed him hard. Every week there were new exercises, new skills to learn and practice.

While Braddock worked at the gym, Joe Gould was busy in other ways. At Madison Square Garden, he walked into Jimmy Johnston's office and sat down.

"You're going to arrange a fight between Jim Braddock and John Henry Lewis."

Johnston looked up from the papers he was signing. "Now why would I do that?"

Joe smiled confidently. "Lewis is number two in line to fight for the heavyweight title, and he's already beaten Braddock once before. So put Braddock against Lewis. If Lewis wins, your boy has had a good practice fight before his next opponent, and you make some money. If, by some chance, Braddock beats Lewis, you have a

people's favorite, which means you make *more* money. Whatever happens, you're richer with Braddock back in the ring." Gould sat back. "So what do you say?"

As soon as he got an answer, Joe rushed back to the gym.

"I got you a fight," he told Jim from the ropes. "You're going to fight John Henry Lewis again."

Jim climbed out of the ring. "I could kiss you."

Joe took a step back. "Please don't!" The manager became suddenly serious. "I won't lie, Jimmy. You're in this fight because you're meat. But if you win it, I can get you another one. If you win the next, then everything changes."

Jim understood. He turned toward the heavy punching bag.

"Jimmy," Joe called.

Jim turned and saw the old fire in his manager's eyes.

"Win!" said Joe.

•

It was the afternoon before the fight. Jim was still at home.

"I know this isn't what you wanted," he said softly to Mae. "But I can't win if you don't support me."

Mae put the pile of clean clothes down and stepped up to her husband. "I always support you," she whispered.

While their parents were kissing, the three children took their chance to run out of the apartment. They walked through the small crowd that stood outside the building. Soon they stood again in the butcher shop.

"What can I do for you today?" Sam, the butcher, asked.

"My dad's fighting a man who beat him badly once before," said Rosy anxiously. "What kind of steaks do you have?"

Down the block, Jim stepped out of the apartment house and was met by a small crowd of neighbors.

"We're all supporting you," said an old man.

"Take him down, Jim!" cried another.

Suddenly, a familiar face appeared in front of Jim—Mike Wilson. They shook hands.

"I put some money on you," Mike said.

"Mike, everybody expects Lewis to win," said Jim.

But Mike just gave a confident smile. "Do you need some help in your corner?" he asked.

Jim shook his head. "I have my regular guys for that. You know how it is, Mike."

Mike's shoulders dropped, but he tried to laugh. "Sure I do, Jim. Now go and win the fight!"

•

The powerful jab pushed Braddock back against the ropes. John Henry Lewis was a young black boxer with quick hands and a lot of skill. His perfectly timed combinations of punches pushed Jim on to the ropes again.

"Lewis is here to repeat his win over Braddock," said the radio announcer.

For three rounds, the two fighters danced around the ring, looking for the other man's weak areas. Then, in the fourth round, the fight became serious. The fighters went toe to toe, refusing to step back.

In his corner at the end of the round, Lewis looked confused.

"You beat this guy easily last time!" his manager screamed.

Lewis just shook his head. "He isn't the same guy."

In the opposite corner, Gould checked Braddock's face. The boxer was tired and breathing hard, his body covered with sweat.

"He's even faster than I remember," said Jim.

Gould spoke into the boxer's ear. "He's fast, but he'll be slower after a few more punches. Watch him—he always moves to the right."

Both fighters started round five like mad animals. Leather gloves flew, and neither man backed away. Suddenly, Braddock

hit his opponent with a powerful cross and Lewis was down on one knee. When the fight continued, Lewis wasn't able to protect himself, letting Braddock knock him back on to the ropes.

In the end, the judges gave the fight to Braddock. Some sports reporters said that he had deserved to win. Others said that he had just hit Lewis with a few lucky punches.

As Joe Gould gave Jim his share of the prize money, he said, "Take care of yourself. Our luck has changed—I'm sure of it."

•

A month later, in December 1934, Jimmy Johnston made the announcement that Joe Gould expected. He was going to organize fights among the top heavyweight boxers. Finally, one man would be chosen to fight the champion, Max Baer, for the heavyweight title. Johnston had several boxers in mind, but Braddock wasn't one of them. He didn't think that Braddock was lucky—he was *good*. Johnston didn't want the New Jersey boxer to stop another of his young stars.

But Gould refused to take no for an answer. Again and again he went to Johnston's office, trying to get a fight for his man.

"How about a fight with Art Lasky?" he tried.

At first Johnston refused. But, after hearing how confident Lasky's people were, he changed his mind. Braddock's next fight was going to be with Art Lasky. He was a young fighter from Minnesota who had won a few fights in the West. He wasn't as fast as Lewis, but he was big and strong.

•

The Lasky fight started well for Braddock. In the early rounds, his opponent couldn't get past Braddock's gloves. The boxer from Minnesota took a lot of punishment and soon his nose was bloody.

Everything changed in the fifth round. Lasky started hitting Braddock with punch after punch to the body. Fighting with new

confidence, he took the next few rounds from the New Jersey man. In the eleventh round, Braddock found himself back on the ropes, as Lasky's fists flew at him.

"Art Lasky is ending the story of Jim Braddock's second chance in boxing," said the radio announcer.

A big punch hit the side of Braddock's head and his mouthguard flew out. The crowd waited for Braddock to drop. Instead, he stood there, eye to eye with Lasky. Then he calmly walked over and picked up his mouthguard.

"I can't believe my eyes," said the announcer. "Braddock just took Lasky's best punch and it had no effect on him!"

Braddock was a different fighter after that. He fought from a distance, throwing jabs at Lasky's bloody face. In the fifteenth round, Braddock's glove hit the other man's nose. Blood showered the ring.

"This is unbelievable!" shouted the radio announcer. "Nothing can stop Braddock now."

As Lasky moved with increasing difficulty, Braddock hit him with a combination of punches that sent him into the ropes at the side of the ring. Those ropes were the only thing that kept Lasky on his feet.

"And the winner is . . . James J. Braddock!"

The shouts of the crowd reached the streets outside. By radio, they reached across the country. They were heard in Branson, Missouri, where Ancil Hoffman ran to another room in the hotel he was staying in. He knocked at the door urgently.

Max Baer, the heavyweight champion of the world, opened the door and looked down angrily at Hoffman.

"Jim Braddock just beat Lasky," said the champion's manager. "He's the number one challenger for your title."

Baer replied with an ugly smile. "The guy's a loser," he said. "Tell Johnston to find me somebody who can fight back." Then he shut the door in Ancil's face.

Chapter 10 Night in the Park

The streets around Madison Square Garden were quiet, but as soon as Jim stepped outside, a crowd of around fifty men closed in around him and Joe. They were very different from the crowd that had waited after the Griffiths fight years ago. These men looked tired and hungry. But when they saw Jim Braddock, hope lit up their faces and they stood taller.

"Just sign your name for a few," said Joe with a smile. "Leave them wanting more."

"No, Joe. Tonight I sign them *all!*"

Jim moved among the crowd, shaking hands and signing his name and talking for over an hour.

Joe did most of the talking on the drive to New Jersey. When they reached the apartment building, Jim opened the door.

"Good night, Joe."

"Haven't you forgotten something?" asked Joe. He reached into his coat for Jim's share of the prize money. He began to explain how he had decided on the amount.

"I trust you, Joe," said Jim. "And Mae trusts you, too."

Joe pushed the money into the fighter's hand and waved goodnight.

When Jim entered the little apartment, he put some of the cash in the jar on the shelf. He put the rest in a white envelope.

Jim didn't sleep much that night and he left the apartment before Mae and the children woke up. The sidewalks were empty as he walked to the center of town. He joined the line inside the relief office and waited patiently.

Finally, he stepped up to the counter and nodded at the woman. He gave her the white envelope.

The woman was confused when she looked at the cash. "So . . . you're giving us the money *back?*"

On the way home, Jim bought twelve roses for Mae. They were

very expensive, but he wanted to apologize for not waking her to tell her about the Lasky fight. He hadn't wanted to celebrate until he had paid back the money to the relief office.

But when he got home, it wasn't the time for celebrating. Mike Wilson's wife, Sara, was sitting on the sofa with her baby girl in her arms. Her eyes were red from crying.

"Mike's gone," said Mae seriously. "It's been three days now."

"About a week after you left the docks, Jim, the foreman stopped picking him for work," cried Sara. "I went to stay with my brother. There wasn't room for Mike, so he's been sleeping in Central Park." Sara looked straight at Jim. "He said he was going to do some work for you. We were going to meet last night, but Mike never came."

Silently, Mae pointed at the jar that contained their money. Jim nodded. "Listen, Sara, you and Mae go and get something for the baby's cough."

But Sara was crying. "Something's wrong. I know it is!"

Jim moved toward the front door. "I'll go and find him."

Hours later, Jim entered Central Park. As the sun sank, he knew that the enormous park wasn't as empty as it looked. Since the Crash of 1929, tens of thousands of New Yorkers were living in cars, or on the streets, or in the subway. A lot of people had started living in Central Park. Some of them built huts or tents from any materials they could find. Others slept wherever they could. They ate any food they could find or catch or steal.

Jim had heard that there had been a lot of sheep in Central Park. Most had been moved away. Now, as he searched for Mike, Jim saw park workers guiding the last sheep into enormous wagons. Jim watched until a policeman on a horse waved at him to move away.

The shadows became longer as night came, and soon trash can fires were the only lights in the park. Jim went deeper into the park, past huts and tents. The sound of wet coughs filled the air.

"Mike! Mike Wilson?" he called.

Suddenly, two running policemen shouted at him to get out of the way. He looked to see where they were going and saw a crowd of people around several policemen on horses. Jim heard angry shouts and saw flames. He ran to the crowd and had to push his way through a wall of people to reach the center.

A group of men had fought the police here, turning one of the sheep wagons over and burning huts. The police were in control again and were guiding the men away like sheep.

There were two policemen on horses near Jim. "We were just trying to move the sheep," one of them told the other. "But one of these guys started shouting at us. He was angry, very political. Then they attacked us."

Jim closed his eyes and remembered all Mike's angry talk. He knew this must be Mike. He began looking for his friend among all the fallen men on the grass. He got closer to the wagon that lay on its side.

"A guy tried to free the sheep," a policeman was saying. "The horses were scared and the wagon turned over."

There was someone with his legs under the enormous wheels of the wagon. A group of men lifted the wagon up, and that's when Jim realized that there was a second man under the wagon, lying in a pool of blood. It was Mike.

Jim's friend wasn't dead yet. Jim moved the hair from Mike's eyes.

"Did you win?" Mike asked. His voice was soft and filled with pain.

Jim nodded. "You're going to be OK, Mike," he said.

Mike managed a weak nod. "I know it. . ."

But, in the cold and dark of New York's Central Park, as the smoke from the burning huts blew over them and took away the last of the light, both men knew that this wasn't true.

•

Few people came to Mike's funeral. It was a work day and most people couldn't afford to lose a day's money. Only Jim and Mae Braddock and their three children stood with Sara Wilson and her baby daughter as Mike's body was put into the ground.

Jim spoke of Mike's love for his family, his wife. He didn't say what he felt—that Mike's death was a waste, a stupid, unnecessary waste. Jim understood why people got angry, but Mike's anger hadn't helped his wife or his daughter. Jim wished he had known how bad things had become for his friend. He couldn't forget how kind Mike had been to him when he started working at the docks.

Mae's attention was on Sara, whose eyes were far away. She seemed to be staring into the long future that waited for her without her husband.

As she looked at Sara, part of Mae wondered if she was looking into a mirror of her own future. Maybe not today or tomorrow—but one day she might lose Jim.

Chapter 11 Face to Face with the Champion

Madison Square Garden, March 24, 1935

Jim Braddock and Joe Gould smiled for the cameras. Then it was time for the reporters' questions.

"Jim, do you have anything to say to our readers?"

"Not everybody gets a second chance," answered Jim. He looked at Mae, who sat at the front in a new yellow dress, smiling nervously. "I have a lot to be grateful for."

A second reporter stood. "Can you tell our readers why you gave your relief money back?"

Jim nodded. "This great country of ours helps a man when he's in trouble. I've had some good luck, so I thought I'd return the money."

Another reporter stood. "Max Baer says that he's worried he's going to kill you in the ring. What do you say?"

Mae looked down at her hands. Jim looked the reporter in the eye. "Max Baer is the champion," he said. "I'm looking forward to the fight."

The next question was from a familiar face. Sporty Lewis stood and turned toward Mae. "Mrs. Braddock, how do you feel about the fact that Max Baer has killed two men in the ring?" Mae could find no words. "Mrs. Braddock, are you scared for your husband's life?" continued Lewis.

A camera appeared in front of Mae's face. Jim jumped to his feet. "She's scared for Max Baer!" he shouted.

Joe Gould lifted his arms like a referee. "OK, OK, one more question . . ."

While Jim answered the last question, his eyes searched for Mae. She refused to look up, not wanting him to see the doubts and fear in her eyes.

When Jim Braddock and Joe Gould entered Madison Square Garden's boxing club, Jimmy Johnston was waiting for them. The rich, powerful businessman waved a newspaper at the fighter and his manager.

"It says here that this fight is as good as murder," Johnston said, stepping close up to Braddock. "This is my business, and I'm going to protect myself. You *will* know exactly what Baer can do before you get in that ring."

A door opened and a small man in a suit entered the room. This was Johnston's lawyer, and he was followed by a secretary.

Johnston went to a machine and began to show a film. It showed two boxers getting ready to fight. One was Max Baer. Johnston said the other man's name. "That's Frankie Campbell . . . A good fighter who knows how to take a punch."

The fight began. Johnston turned to Braddock. "Is Campbell's style familiar, Jim? It's like looking in a mirror, isn't it?"

"He doesn't need to see this," complained Joe.

"He'll see it or there'll be no fight!" Johnston warned.

On the film, Campbell stepped forward with a good left jab, almost as good as Jim's. Baer blocked it easily, then hit back with his right. The punch was too fast to see, and it had a strange, terrible power. Campbell just stood there in confusion, with his gloves down by his side. The second punch hit the side of his head. And then Campbell was down, his legs wide, his eyes open but seeing nothing.

"It was the second punch that killed him," said Johnston.

"You've warned us," said Joe. "Now stop the film."

"No," said Jim, surprising both Joe and Johnston. "Show it again."

When the lights were back on, Johnston stared at Jim. "Remember Ernie Schaff ? He was a good fighter. Ernie took one of Baer's punches on the chin. He was dead and didn't know it. In his next fight, the first jab killed him." He sat back in his chair. "Do you want to think about this fight?"

Jim hit his hands on the desk angrily. "Do you think you're telling me something I don't know?" he shouted. "How many guys died because they didn't have enough food? Or because they had to work long hours and dangerous jobs to feed their families? I've thought about it as much as I'm going to."

"OK, then." Johnston looked away. "Why don't you both eat here tonight with your wives?"

The fight organizer smiled, but there was something about the look in his eyes that Jim didn't trust.

Later that day, the two men returned to the club's restaurant with their wives. The four ate, talked, and laughed, as a piano played quietly in the corner.

After the meal, Joe pulled a newspaper out of his pocket. He

turned to the sports pages and began to read. "Jim Braddock is back from the dead to give hope to every American."

Jim was surprised. "Who wrote that?"

"Sporty Lewis. The newspaper is calling you the Cinderella Man."

"Cinderella Man?" Jim didn't look happy. *Cinderella* was a children's story. Wasn't Cinderella the girl who had to stay at home and clean while her sisters went to a wonderful party at the palace?

"I like it," said Mae, squeezing his hand.

Suddenly, an enormous man with two young women on his arms walked in through the front door. Conversations died around the room. The man had thick black hair and the brightest blue eyes. He was wearing an expensive white jacket, but he looked dangerous. As usual, all eyes in the room turned to him. This was Max Baer.

Jim turned to his manager. "Do you think Johnston planned this?" he asked angrily.

Joe nodded. "Sure. More pictures for the papers."

Physically, Baer was the perfect boxer. He had a narrow waist, wide shoulders, strong legs, and long arms. He was young, too—at twenty-six, three years younger than Jim. And he had the strongest punch Joe Gould had ever seen—probably the strongest punch in the history of boxing.

Joe knew that there were ways to beat the champion. His right-hand punch was so powerful that he hadn't really worked on improving his left hand. But Joe couldn't forget the sight of Baer destroying Primo Carnera. The big Italian had been knocked down eleven times in that fight.

Joe's attention moved away from Baer when a waiter arrived with a bottle of wine and four glasses.

"From the gentleman at the bar . . . Mr. Baer said I should wish you good luck."

Jim looked at Mae. The blood had run from her face, leaving her pale with worry. He stood. "Get the coats, Joe." Then he began walking toward the bar.

Baer gave a big smile when he saw Jim coming. "Look, it's the Cinderella Man!" he shouted.

Jim stood toe to toe with the champion. "You keep saying in the newspapers that you're going to kill me in the ring. I have three little kids. You're upsetting my family."

Baer moved closer. His voice was quiet as he said, "Listen to me, Braddock. I'm asking you not to take this fight. People admire you. You seem like a nice guy, and I don't want to hurt you. It's no joke. They're calling you the Cinderella Man. Well, people die in children's stories all the time."

Suddenly, a small crowd of reporters and photographers ran into the club. Baer turned to face the cameras and smiled. His voice was loud again as he started performing for the cameras. "If you're smart, you'll fall over in the first round," he told Jim.

Jim's eyes met Baer's. "I think I'll try for a few rounds," he said.

Baer noticed Mae, standing behind Jim now. "You should talk to him," he said. "You're much too pretty to lose your husband." Jim squeezed his fist into a ball, ready to attack, but Baer continued to look at Mae. "Maybe I can take care of you after he's gone."

This time Joe Gould jumped, waving his fists at the champion. Jim pulled him back.

Mae stepped up to the bar. Baer's bright blue eyes followed her as she picked up his drink, then threw it in his face.

Baer just laughed as he dried his face. "Did you get that, boys?" he said to the reporters. "Braddock has his wife fighting for him."

Jim stepped up to Max Baer. The two boxers were nose to nose. Then Jim turned, took his wife's hand, and led her away. As they left, the sound of Baer laughing followed them into the street.

Chapter 12 The Big Day

"Keep your head down and give me a combination—left, right, left."

Jim was teaching Jay and Howard how to box. Jay threw out a right fist and lifted his chin. Jim reached forward and gently hit his son's chin. "Don't take your eyes off your opponent," he said.

"That's enough, now," said Mae from the kitchen sink.

Jim looked at his boys proudly. "There's more than one fighter in the Braddock family."

As the two boys continued to box, they knocked over a chair.

Mae turned. "I said that's enough!" she cried. "No boxing in the house!" She pointed at her two sons. "You are going to stay in school. Then college. You are going to have professions. You are not going to have your heads broken in the boxing ring. Is that clear?"

The boys froze. Before they could reply, Mae ran out of the apartment. As she stood outside, she could still hear Sporty Lewis's words in her head: *Max Baer has killed two men in the ring.*

She didn't turn when she heard Jim's steps. "When you boxed before, sometimes I hoped that you would get hurt. Just enough so you couldn't fight again . . . I always knew a day would come when a fight could kill you. And now it's here." She looked her husband in the eye. "Why? Why fight him?"

"This is what I know how to do," said Jim simply.

Mae waited for Jim to take her in his arms, to say that he had changed his mind, but he didn't. Part of him wished that he could, but it was impossible. She didn't understand how it felt for men like Jim or Mike Wilson—strong, hardworking men who were told that they were useless. There were thousands of people like this now, and they found hope in the fighter they called the Cinderella Man. Jim had to fight, for them.

Mae's fear turned to anger. "I supported you until now," she said. "But not for this, Jim. I just can't . . ." Her voice went cold. "You find a way out of this fight. Break your hand again, if you have to. But if you leave this apartment to fight Max Baer, I won't support you."

•

As the day of the fight grew closer, Max Baer helped reporters fill their sports pages. His latest demand was that there must be an ambulance outside Madison Square Garden, ready to rush Jim to a local hospital after Baer hit him.

Jim just continued training. Joe Jeannette chose good partners for him to work with in the ring. Each one helped Jim improve one skill—one partner helped him work on his hand speed; another partner allowed him to practice dodging big punches; another helped him move around the ring quickly.

Jim, Joe, and Jeannette also watched film of Baer's fights for hours every day. "Watch him," said Jeannette, pointing. "His punches are strong, but you can see them coming."

With just a few weeks to go, Braddock's training became even harder. Joe and Jeannette started changing his boxing partners more and more often, so Jim fought a fresh fighter every round. One of the newspaper sports pages included something that Joe had said: "Braddock is going to be really prepared for this fight, if he lives through training!"

Joe laughed when he read that, until his wife reminded him that Mae Braddock would read it, too.

•

Finally, the big day arrived. When Joe Gould arrived at the gym that morning, Jim was sitting alone, with a jacket tight around his chest.

"What's wrong with him?" the manager asked Joe Jeannette.

Jeannette shook his head. "He's fitter than ever, but he's old. His ribs aren't strong since the Lasky fight."

Gould already knew about the problem with Jim's ribs, but he thought there was something else wrong. Gould knew that Jim's wife wasn't happy about his profession, and about this fight especially. But whatever the problem was, there was no time to solve it now. The fight was just hours away.

"The reporters will be here soon," he told Jim. "Take off that jacket or Baer will see that you have a rib problem."

Jim climbed into the training ring as a crowd of sports writers rushed into the room. He worked hard, but he still wanted to train more after the last reporter had gone.

Joe Jeannette refused. "Go home and get some rest. You'll be working hard enough in the ring tonight."

So Jim went home. He returned to a house that was empty except for Mae. She stood silently, looking at the newspaper:

WORLD CHAMPION FIGHT TONIGHT
MANY WORRY FOR BRADDOCK'S LIFE

Without a word, she turned and walked away.

As the morning became afternoon, Jim lay in bed, unable to sleep. A taxi came for him at four o'clock.

Mae followed Jim outside, where a small crowd of neighbors was waiting: "Come home with that title!" "Knock him out!"

Jim kissed his three children. Then his eyes met Mae's. "I can't win if you don't support me," he said.

"Then don't go, Jimmy."

Time seemed to stretch, with each of them waiting for the other to say something. Then Mae turned and pulled the children close to her. Jim watched as she pushed her way back through the crowd. Then he climbed into the waiting taxi.

The taxi drove past the tall buildings of Manhattan, then crossed the East River. Jim was silent, running the films of Baer's fights

through his head, remembering Jeannette's advice—anything to help him forget the look on Mae's face as he left.

They reached the Madison Square Garden Bowl and Jim looked out at the waiting crowd. He could see that these people had known hard times. But there was something else, too, a bright look in their eyes—hope.

Jim saw his own face in the glass of the car window. He had beaten Tuffy Griffiths so confidently, but that man was gone forever. He had passed his hat hopelessly around the boxing club, but that man, was gone, too. No, he was looking now at the face of every man who had ever been beaten down by hard times but refused to stop fighting.

That's when Jim knew. No matter what happened tonight, he wouldn't give up. He would die trying.

•

It was a hot day and getting hotter. Jim sat in his dressing room waiting to go out and be weighed.

"Come on, champion," said Joe Gould when there was a knock on the door.

"Wait a minute," said Jim. "The last time I looked, I was the challenger, not the champion."

"I know what I said," replied Joe.

On his way to the weighing room, Max Baer had seen an old trainer who had worked with him years before. There were angry words and Baer hit out at the man. Cameras recorded the attack.

When there was peace in the room again, officials and reporters watched the two boxers being weighed. It was very hot in the crowded room.

Max Baer went first, stepping up with his fists above his head and an ugly smile on his face.

"Ninety-five and a half kilograms," the judge announced.

Then it was Jim's turn. "Eighty-six and a half kilograms."

Max Baer was waiting for him when he stepped down. "How does the story go?" said Baer, loud enough for all the reporters to hear. "The clock strikes midnight, and then Cinderella loses her skirt!"

People laughed and more photos were taken, but Jim didn't care. He would have the chance to reply later, in the ring. He went back to his dressing room to get ready for the fight.

Max Baer returned to his dressing room. His trainer was waiting with something for the champion to watch—a film of Braddock's fight against Art Lasky.

"Look, right there!" said the trainer, as Lasky hit Braddock in the ribs, clearly hurting him. "Braddock's ribs are weak. If you can hit them with a few good jabs, you'll really hurt him."

"I don't need to," answered Baer. "I can knock this loser down any time. I just need to give the crowd a good show before I kill him."

Baer's manager, Ancil Hoffman, came into the room.

"Did you get it?" asked the champion.

Hoffman nodded. "The ambulance is waiting outside. There's a doctor there, too."

Max looked in the mirror. "That's all I can do for him. Now Braddock's on his own."

•

Mae spent the rest of the day at her sister's house. As the children played, she and Alice sat and talked, but they didn't discuss the real reason for Mae's visit.

As the afternoon shadows grew longer, Mae became quieter. At five o'clock, she stood. "No radio, Alice," she said. "I'll be back soon."

Mae walked through the empty streets of Newark until she came to the family's church. Father Rorick stood at the door. There were crowds inside.

"Father?" Mae asked, confused by the crowd. "I came to say a few words in church for Jim."

"All these people are doing the same," said the priest. "They think Jim's fighting for them."

Mae looked at the crowd again. All of these people were beaten down by hard times. They admired her husband. If he could fight and win, maybe *they* could . . .

"Yes, I understand now," said Mae. She turned and hurried down the street. She could hear radios through open windows and doors. Everybody was getting ready to listen to the fight—at the docks, in homes and bars, in Sam the butcher's. Beyond Newark, too—across the country—people wanted the Cinderella Man to win. They wanted him to become the prince, the king, the *champion*.

•

Joe Gould was taping Jim's hands in the dressing room. They could hear the sound of the crowd beyond. Suddenly, there was a knock on the door and a small, familiar shape stood there—it was Mae.

"Excuse me for a minute," said Joe. He left, closing the door behind him.

Finally, Mae spoke. "You can't win if I don't support you."

"I keep telling you that," said Jim.

Mae handed him a brown paper bag. "I thought it was going to rain, so I used the money in the rainy-day jar." Jim opened the bag and stared at the new pair of boxing shoes inside.

"Maybe I understand." Mae's eyes shone. The two kissed and, smiling through her tears, Mae said, "I always support you, Jimmy. Just you remember who you are! You're everybody's hope and your kids' hero and you're the champion of my heart, James J. Braddock!"

It was almost fight time. "See you at home, okay?" Mae whispered, as she moved to the door. "Please, Jimmy . . ."

Jim nodded. "See you at home."

Chapter 13 The Hopes of the Crowd

*Madison Square Garden Bowl, Long Island City,
New York June 13, 1935*

As Jim Braddock stepped out into the bright lights, the crowd became silent. The ring seemed so far away. Between him and it were thousands of people—Jim's people. He knew the looks on their faces—people who saw no chance of a future. Some had spent their last dollar to be here, but tonight they all held their heads high. Their eyes followed him with the wild hope that the story of the Cinderella Man would have a happy ending.

It was the strangest walk to the ring Jim had ever made. As he passed, people got to their feet. They smiled and nodded and waved at their hero, but they were still silent. Finally, someone called his name and the shout broke the silence for everybody. The whole crowd—thirty-five thousand people—began to shout, and the noise went up to the star-filled sky.

•

Mae's sister Alice was looking for Jay, Howard, and Rosy, to call them to supper. There was no sign of the children. Were they hiding? She was going to look outside, when she heard a sound from the closet under the stairs.

All three children were sitting around a radio. They looked up at their aunt, and Alice knew that she couldn't stop them. Without saying a word, she sat down next to the children and listened to the announcer on the radio.

"I don't know if you can hear me," the announcer was shouting. "I can't hear myself! The crowd is on its feet and the noise is deafening."

Back in the Madison Square Garden Bowl, the crowd was silent again when they realized that Max Baer was walking to the ring. The champion felt the crowd's fear. He enjoyed it. When he had

climbed into the ring, Baer ran around and accepted the crowd's boos with a confident smile on his face.

The referee called the boxers and their corner men to him. "I want a clean fight," he said. "When I say break, step back immediately. And remember"—he looked at Jim—"protect yourself at all times."

As the fighters touched gloves, Baer's corner man held a gold watch in front of Braddock's face. "One minute to midnight, Cinderella!" he laughed.

The fighters returned to their corners. Baer's manager, Ancil Hoffman, whispered final words of advice to the champion, but Baer wasn't interested. Jim closed his eyes. Finally, the sound of the bell broke the silence and the fight began.

•

Round 1 Braddock came out fast and hard, hoping to surprise the champion. Showing no fear, he hit Baer with a right hand, and then followed it with a left to the body. The champion tried to punch back, but Braddock danced away.

On Braddock's next attack, Baer was ready. His left fist hit Braddock's ribs hard. Braddock's answer was a combination of punches—a long right to the face, another right, a left, and a final right to the chin. The champion knew now that Braddock had a good punch, but he refused to show any pain.

"Calm down, old man," Baer laughed as the fighters held on to each other. "I'll let the fight go a few rounds."

As the bell rang, Baer knew that he had lost the round on points, but he didn't care. He was confident that he could end this fight at any time with one punch.

In the corner, Gould met Braddock with a big smile. "Did you see the look on Baer's face when you hit him?"

Jim took out his mouthguard. "Yes, he was *laughing*."

"So use your left hand to knock that smile off his face!"

In the opposite corner Ancil Hoffman was shouting, but Baer waved him away. "I'll kill him when I'm ready."

"Your left, Jimmy," Joe said again. "Remember your left."

Round 2 Braddock came out with his fists moving at the start of the second round, too.

"Nobody expected this fight to go one round," the radio announcer was saying. "But it's only reached round two because Baer is playing with Braddock. He's thrown almost no punches and he's laughing at the challenger."

But soon Baer started throwing more punches, aiming at Braddock's weak ribs. The strength of Baer's punches knocked the breath out of him.

"The champion has really hurt the challenger," said the announcer. The crowd began to boo.

"That's the right place, isn't it, old man?" said Baer.

The referee separated the fighters at the sound of the bell. One of Braddock's corner men worked on the fighter's cuts, while the other gave the boxer water. Jim coughed it back up. He needed air, not water.

Joe examined Jim's ribs. "They're not broken," he said. "Not yet."

Across the ring, Baer was playing and acting for the cameras. As he watched this, Jim realized that he himself didn't care about pleasing the crowd now. He wasn't even fighting Baer. He was fighting to beat the thing that had beaten him. He was fighting for his family's future.

Round 3 For the third time, Braddock came out fast. He threw his punches at Baer's head, but the champion's punches were aimed at his opponent's body. Baer continued to hit Braddock's ribs hard with both hands. He hit Braddock with a low punch, and the referee warned the champion to keep his fists up.

Before the fight started again, Gould saw that Braddock's gloves were down by his side, but there was no time to shout a warning.

Baer had seen it, too. He hit the side of Braddock's head with a big left-hand punch. Jim's legs bent. He was clearly in terrible pain—was he going to fall? Gould froze in fear. He thought about giving in, ending the fight.

"Give him a chance, Joe," said the corner man.

A few seconds later, Jim stood straighter and reached for the ropes.

Baer couldn't believe it. He attacked again, but this time Braddock hit back with a long right, then a left jab that made Baer's head look like a punching bag.

"That's it!" shouted Gould, jumping up and down.

Round 4 From the start of the next round, both men stood toe to toe, throwing jabs. Braddock's feet were quicker and his punches more effective, so Baer started aiming for the body again. After a few good punches to the ribs, he was sure that every breath caused Braddock terrible pain.

The two men held each other again and the referee called for them to break. But Baer continued to hold Braddock.

"Dirty fighting!" shouted Gould angrily from the corner.

"I warned you," the referee told Baer. "When I say 'Break!' you break!"

The crowd booed as Baer finally stepped back. He shook the sweat from his thick black hair and held up his hands to apologize. Out of the corner of his eye, he could see that Braddock wasn't protecting himself.

Without warning, Baer turned and delivered an enormous punch to Braddock's ribs. To everybody's surprise—especially Baer's—Braddock replied with a combination of left-right punches before stepping back.

Round 5 Baer's manager, Ancil Hoffman, couldn't understand it. The challenger's ribs were in bad condition, but Braddock was

still controlling the fight, jabbing Baer again and again and tiring him. The timing of the champion's punches wasn't right, and Hoffman knew that he was waiting for the chance to deliver his big knockout punch instead of tiring his opponent. But Baer wasn't able to hit Braddock, who dodged and danced away skillfully.

The champion was getting angry now. He hit Braddock with an illegal backhand punch as the referee separated the two fighters. The referee warned Baer, but the two men continued fighting before holding on to each other again.

"Step back!" shouted the referee, but the two men didn't let go.

Braddock hit the champion's chin with his head. The champion shouted in anger. He lifted Braddock and threw him into the ropes, paying no attention to the boos of the crowd.

When the round was over, Hoffman shouted angrily at Baer, "What are you doing?"

"Relax," the champion told him.

"I'll relax," replied Ancil, "when we walk out of here with the title."

Round 6 Baer hit Braddock with three good punches in the first seconds of the round. Blood poured from the challenger's nose and mouth.

But then, suddenly, it seemed to Baer that a train had hit him. It was Braddock's right hand, and it hit the champion on the chin with enormous power. Baer stepped back, fighting for air. But Braddock gave him no space, throwing punch after punch with his left hand. One of them hit the champion just above the eye. Baer fought back, but his aim wasn't as good as the challenger's. His right eye began to close.

For the first time in this fight, Baer felt relief when the bell rang. He promised himself that he would end the fight in the next round, even if he had to kill the Cinderella Man to do it.

Round 7 As soon as the round began, it was clear that Baer had a new attitude. Joe Gould could see it. The crowd could also feel the change. Baer wanted to finish this fight *now*.

But Braddock wasn't afraid. He met the champion in the middle of the ring and the two fighters continued the fight. Baer hit Braddock with several punches to the body. The last of these hit below the belt.

"Keep your punches up, Max," said Braddock.

Baer smiled and delivered a combination of punches to his opponent's body and head. "Is that *up* enough?"

Braddock forced himself to smile through the pain. "That's fine, Max."

As the bell rang, Baer continued throwing punches. Braddock hit back as hard as he could, but Max Baer just laughed.

"I can't believe this!" said the radio announcer. "Everybody expected the champion to win easily. But now, after the seventh round, neither fighter is ahead. Either of them could win."

Chapter 14 The Luckiest Man

"Alice?" The house seemed empty. Mae looked at the uneaten meal on her sister's kitchen table. Then she heard noises from the closet in the hall. They were all there—Mae's three children and her sister—listening to the fight on the radio.

"The crowd was expecting big things from champion Max Baer in the eighth round," the radio announcer was saying. "But Jim Braddock refused to be beaten."

Rosy looked up and saw her mother. "It's the police," she said to the others.

"By the ninth round, it was a fact that Braddock had fought better than anybody expected," continued the announcer. "But some people were saying that Baer allowed this to happen. In the tenth round, the champion was in complete control of the fight."

Mae reached to turn off the radio. Jay's eyes met hers. "Please, Mom."

She looked into their hopeful faces and knew that she couldn't say no. But she refused to listen herself. Without a word, she turned and walked away, as the eleventh round began.

Round 11 Baer was mad as he rushed out. He chased Braddock around the ring, throwing punches at the challenger . . . and then it came—Baer's big punch, the one that had killed two men.

When it hit him, Braddock's mind was in a fog. He felt heavy and light at the same time, and his legs could only just support him. He felt the ropes on his back.

Suddenly, a memory of his family came into Jim's head—his wife and children. The reason why he was here. He let the ropes support him for a few seconds, and then he pushed forward, back on his feet.

Baer just stared at Braddock, unable to believe that the challenger had taken the punch and not been knocked out. Jim looked back into Baer's broken face and smiled.

For the rest of the round, Baer tried to finish his opponent, but his wild punches missed. Braddock hit back with a jab, a cross, another jab. With each punch, he felt his strength returning. There was blood on Baer's face now.

At the end of the round, Braddock's corner men worked urgently on the cut under the fighter's eye. Joe Gould seemed close to tears. "Jimmy," said his manager. "Win, or lose . . ."

"Thanks, Joe, for all of it." Jim lifted a bloody glove. "Now stop talking."

Round 12 Baer started the twelfth round still trying to finish the fight with one big punch. But the challenger was faster and dodged the punches.

"He's slow!" shouted Gould from the corner.

The crowd was shouting in both happiness and fear.

"You're right, it *is* a funeral," shouted the young reporter next to Sporty Lewis. "Max Baer's funeral."

But Lewis didn't hear. He was on his feet, shouting like everybody else. The crowd's shout was like a wave of noise.

"Braddock! Braddock! Braddock!"

It was too much for Max Baer. He ran at Braddock, moving his fists fast and hard. The punches hit the challenger, the last one below the belt. Braddock bent over in pain as the round ended.

Joe Gould jumped over the ropes, shouting angrily at Baer. The referee and the fight's doctor had to lift the little manager back out of the ring.

Baer just stood in the center of the ring.

"That low punch lost you the round," the referee told him.

Baer waved him away and moved back to his corner. Ancil Hoffman was waiting for him. "You're losing! Are you listening to me? Do you want to lose the title to this nobody?"

•

At her sister's house in New Jersey, Mae had stopped pretending to herself that she was reading the newspaper—that she wasn't listening to the radio.

She went back to the hall, where the others still sat listening. Mae hid around the corner so her children couldn't see her. She stood in the dark and listened to the thirteenth and fourteenth rounds with growing fear.

At last, when there was just one more round in the fight, she stepped out of the shadows. Rosy moved to the side. "Sit here, Mommy." Mae joined her children. Pale with worry, she listened to the announcer.

"It's the fifteenth and final round. The crowd is shouting at Braddock to stay away because Baer is looking for the knockout . . . but Braddock is not staying away, and Baer is delivering the biggest punches of his life."

Mae saw the fear now in her children's eyes. Would their father come home tonight?

"But Braddock is not only standing . . . he's coming forward!"

Round 15 In the ring, Max Baer and Jim Braddock were beaten, bloody and tired. They fought for air as they circled each other, looking for a chance to get past their opponent's defenses. Baer's fists flew and all of his punches were strong enough to knock a man out, but they were wild and anxious. Braddock remained on his feet. He kept coming forward, bringing the fight to Baer.

The final seconds of the fight seemed to stretch forever. For the boxers, the crowd seemed to disappear; the referee, the judges, and the managers were gone, too. For each man there was only the other fighter.

Braddock danced to the side and threw a jab. Baer saw his chance. He threw his famous right punch and hit Braddock right in the head. It knocked the challenger to the side, and now Baer could hit him with the second punch. Silence fell over the crowd. Was this the end?

No. Braddock turned and just managed to dodge the next punch. He hit back, and the two men were still throwing punches when the final bell rang. The fight had ended!

Everybody waited to hear the fight officials announce a winner. It was clear which fighter the crowd wanted.

"Braddock! Braddock! Braddock!"

Minutes later, Braddock was still resting on the ropes while the fight doctor examined him and Joe Gould took his boxing gloves off.

I don't like it," said Joe. "The judges are taking too long."

A shadow fell across their corner. It was Max Baer, who looked Jim Braddock in the eye. "You beat me. It doesn't matter what they say."

Jim tried to find the right words, but Baer was gone before he had a chance to say them.

At last, the judges handed a small, white card to the fight announcer. He climbed over the ropes and moved to the microphone in the middle of the ring.

"Ladies and gentlemen, the winner . . . and new heavyweight champion of the world . . ."

The rest of his words were lost in an explosion of noise.

The same noise filled the streets of Newark. People poured from their houses into the streets to celebrate. They poured out of Father Rorick's church to join everybody else in an unplanned street party. People laughed and cried with happiness. Faces that looked old with worry became suddenly young again.

At her sister's house, Mae's cry cut the night. As the family celebrated, little Rosy smiled proudly at her mother. "It's the steak," she said.

Back at the Madison Square Garden Bowl, the crowd pushed forward for a better look at the Cinderella Man. Everybody wanted to shake his hand, to touch him, to take home a little of his magic for themselves.

James J. Braddock stood in the center of the ring with his arms lifted over his head. Tears poured from his eyes. He listened to the crowd's shouts, but his heart was in another place. It was in a little New Jersey apartment, where his wife and three children would soon be waiting for him to come home. In the end, they were the reason why he was not only the heavyweight champion of the world, but also the luckiest man in it.

•

And so James J. Braddock, at the age of 29, became the heavyweight champion of the world on June 13, 1935. None of the judges disagreed with the decision. For the public and the press, his win was one of the biggest surprises in the history of the

sport. Most agreed that Baer had been beaten by a better boxer on the night.

For two years, Braddock didn't box again. Finally, a fight was arranged with Joe Louis, the "Brown Bomber" from Detroit. On June 22, 1937, the two fighters met in Chicago.

By this time, Braddock was not as strong or healthy as he had been. His left arm was very weak, but he still managed to knock Louis down in the first round. By the fourth round, Joe Louis was controlling the fight. According to Braddock, "After a couple of rounds, I knew I was in there with a great fighter." The end came when Louis knocked Braddock out in the eighth round. "When he hit me with that right, I just lay there." Joe Louis later became one of the greatest heavyweight title holders in the history of boxing.

James J. Braddock fought one more fight after that, in 1938, against a young boxer from Wales, Tommy Farr. Farr had lasted all fifteen rounds against Louis, and most people expected him to beat Braddock. Again, Braddock surprised everybody by winning the fight. Then he decided to leave the sport as a winner. "I have won my last fight," he announced to the press.

After he stopped boxing, Jim Braddock remained friends with Joe Gould. And Braddock had a lot to thank his manager for. When Gould had allowed Joe Louis to challenge Braddock for the title in 1937, he had demanded money from all Joe Louis's heavyweight title fights for the next ten years if Louis won. Jim and Mae Braddock were never poor again. The couple lived in the same New Jersey house that they bought after Jim won the heavyweight title. Jim spent the rest of his life surrounded by friends and neighbors who admired and loved him.

Looking back, Jim Braddock said that, when Baer hit him with his best punch and Jim didn't fall, he was "the happiest guy in the world." The story of the Cinderella Man did have a happy ending.

ACTIVITIES

Chapter 1

Before you read

- 1 Do you like to watch boxing? Why (not)? Discuss the sport with another student. Who is or was your country's greatest boxer?
- 2 Look at the Word List at the back of the book. Check the meaning of unfamiliar words; then discuss these questions with another student. Use the Internet or library books to help you if you don't know much about boxing.
 - a Who is or was the greatest heavyweight champion in the history of boxing? Why?
 - b In your opinion, how many rounds should there be in an amateur boxing fight? How many should there be in a professional fight? Why?
 - c If a boxer is being hit often and is not throwing any punches back, should the referee always stop the fight? Why (not)?
 - d What would you like to be the world champion of? Why?
 - e When is the last time you heard people booing? Why were they booing?
 - f In your opinion, which of these jobs is the hardest? Why?
butcher priest worker at the docks boxer
- 3 Read the Introduction to the book and answer these questions.
 - a What caused hard times in the U.S. in the 1930s?
 - b How was Jim Braddock like millions of other unlucky Americans?
 - c Why did actor Russell Crowe want to play Braddock?
 - d How did Crowe train for the film?

While you read

- 4 Are these sentences correct? Write *yes* or *no*.
 - a Jim Braddock is expected to beat Tuffy Griffiths.. . . .
 - b Braddock wins the fight by a knockout.. . . .
 - c Joe Gould decides which boxers fight at Madison Square Garden.. . . .
 - d Braddock was born in New Jersey.. . . .

- e Braddock still lives in New Jersey.. . . .
- f Jim likes to go to clubs after a fight.. . . .
- g Joe Gould likes to see Mae Braddock.. . . .
- h Mae refused to marry Jim until he had enough money.. . . .
- i Jim and Mae have three children.. . . .
- j Mae goes to all of Jim's fights.. . . .

After you read

- 5 Discuss how these people feel about each other. Give reasons for your answers.
- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|
| a Jim and Joe | c Jim and Mae |
| b Joe and Jimmy Johnston | d Joe and Mae |
- 6 Describe Mae's attitude to Jim's job. How would you feel in her situation?

Chapters 2-3

Before you read

- 7 Life changed for many Americans on October 29, 1929. What do you think happened on that day? What happened afterward?
- 8 You are going to read about the Braddock family's money problems. How do you think these will affect Jim? How will they affect Mae?
- 9 Jim's next fight is described as "an embarrassment." Why, do you think?

While you read

- 10 Write the name of the character.
- a Who is afraid about Jim's next fight?
 - b Who pulls out a gun at the docks?
 - c Who steals food?
 - d Who promises that the Braddocks will
never send their children away?
 - e Who says he will buy Jim an ice cream?
 - f Whose hand is broken?
 - g Who takes away Jim's license?
 - h Who tells Jim, "It's finished"?

After you read

- 11 How has life changed for Jim and his family since 1928? Make a list and compare it with the lists of other students.
- 12 Why are these important to the story?
Jim and Mae's wedding picture a jar a piece of meat
- 13 Work in pairs and have these conversations.

Student A: You are Jim Braddock. Pick one of these times in the story and tell your friend what your thoughts are.

- a waiting for work at the docks
- b before the Feldman fight
- c after you lost your license

Student B: You are Jim's friend. Ask questions.

Chapters 4-5

Before you read

- 14 Look at the titles of these chapters and discuss the questions.
 - a What will Jim's new life be like? How do you think he will earn money for his family with a broken right hand?
 - b What promise will be broken? Who will break it?
- 15 In Chapter 5, Jimmy goes back to Madison Square Garden, but not as a boxer. Why do you think he goes there? Think of some possible reasons.

While you read

- 16** Number these events in the correct order, from 1 to 10.
- a** Jim sells his boxing shoes at the gym..
 - b** Joe Gould gives Jim money..
 - c** Mae takes the children to her relatives..
 - d** Jim is chosen to work at the docks..
 - e** The electricity is turned back on..
 - f** The Braddocks' electricity is cut off..
 - g** Jim goes to the relief office..
 - h** Jim covers his cast with black shoe polish..
 - i** Jim and Mike help a young couple..
 - j** Jim meets Mike Wilson..

After you read

17 Why:

- a does Mike Wilson help Jim at the docks?
- b doesn't Joe Gould speak to Jim when he sees him at the gym?
- c does Mae take the children to her relatives?
- d does Jim become angry that the children are gone?

18 You are Jim Braddock. Pick one of these times in the story and tell the class your thoughts.

- a working at the docks
- b seeing Joe Jeannette at the gym
- c in the line at the relief office
- d when the electricity is turned back on

Chapters 6-7

Before you read

19 Discuss these questions with another student.

- a In Chapter 6, Joe Gould offers Jim something. What will this be?
- b In Chapter 7, Joe Gould says, "Where have you been, Jimmy Braddock?" Why do you think he says this?

While you read

20 Read the questions and circle YES or NO.

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------------------|-----|----|
| a | Is it Howard's birthday? | YES | NO |
| b | Had Jim hit the priest? | YES | NO |
| c | Does Jim hit Mike Wilson? | YES | NO |
| d | Is Mae happy about the children boxing? | YES | NO |
| e | Is Mae happy about the Griffin fight? | YES | NO |
| f | Does Jim train hard for the Griffin fight? | YES | NO |
| g | Does Jim fight Corn Griffin on an empty stomach? | YES | NO |
| h | Does Sporty Lewis think that Jim will win? | YES | NO |
| i | Does Jim beat Griffin by a knockout? | YES | NO |
| j | Does Max Baer beat Primo Carnera? | YES | NO |

After you read

21 Answer these questions.

- a Why is there a party at the church?
- b Why does Joe come to see Jim at his apartment?
- c Why do the Braddock children go back to the butcher shop?
- d Why does Joe Gould look for a spoon?
- e Why does Sporty Lewis get a surprise?
- f Why can't Joe Gould watch Max Baer's fight?

22 The writer includes a description of the fight between Max Baer and Primo Carnera. Why? What effect does this scene have? Discuss your opinion with another student.

Chapters 8-9

Before you read

23 Which of these do you think will happen in the next two chapters?

- a Jim leaves his job at the docks.
- b Mae tries to make Jim stop fighting.
- c Jim loses his next fight.
- d Jim becomes the challenger for the heavyweight title of the world.

While you read

24 Match the speakers with the words.

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| a | "Put it on your eyes." | Jim Braddock |
| b | "Why didn't you tell me you were going to win again?" | Joe Gould |
| c | "You said it was one fight." | Joe Jeannette |
| d | "I'll get him a fight if it's the last thing I do." | John Henry Lewis |
| e | "You've been training, Jimmy." | Mae Braddock |
| f | "I can't win if you don't support me." | Max Baer |
| g | "He isn't the same guy." | Mike Wilson |
| h | "The guy's a loser." | Rosy Braddock |

After you read

25 Answer these questions.

- a Why are the men at the docks surprised to see Jim?
- b Why is Mae surprised at Joe's apartment?
- c Why is Joe Jeannette surprised when Jim starts training?
- d Why is the radio announcer surprised during the Lasky fight?

26 Imagine Mae's thoughts as she returns home after seeing Joe Gould in New York. Make notes; then have this conversation.

Student A: You are Mae. Tell Jim about your visit to Joe's apartment.

Student B: You are Jim. Ask questions. Say what you think about Joe and about Mae's visit.

Chapters 10-11

Before you read

- 27 In the 1930s, some people with no money lived in New York's Central Park. What do you think life was like for them?
- 28 In Chapter 11, Jim Braddock meets the champion, Max Baer, outside the ring. What do you think happens?

While you read

29 Circle the correct word.

- a Jim gives money back to *Joe Gould/the Newark relief office*.
- b He buys some *flowers/chocolates* for Mae.
- c Sara tells Mae that *Jim/Mike* is missing.
- d Jim looks for Mike *in Central Park/at the Newark docks*.
- e *A lot of/Few* people go to Mike's funeral.
- f Sporty Lewis asks *Mae/Jim* questions.
- g *Joe Gould/Jim Braddock* asks Jimmy Johnston to stop the film of Baer's fights.
- h *Max Baer/Jim Braddock* tells his opponent, "I don't want to hurt you."
- i Mae throws *a drink/a punch* at Max Baer.

After you read

30 Pick one of these people. Imagine what they are thinking at Mike's funeral. Discuss it with a partner.

Jim Mae Sara

31 Do you know the complete story of Cinderella? Tell the story. Explain the meaning of the name "Cinderella Man."

32 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation between Jim and Mae after they have met Max Baer at the club.

Student A: You are Mae. You are afraid that Jim will get badly hurt or killed. Ask him not to fight Baer.

Student B: You are Jim. Tell Mae why you have to fight and try to make her feel better.

Chapters 12-13

Before you read

33 It is time for the big fight. How do you think these people feel about it?

Jim Mae the Braddock children Jim's neighbors Max Baer

While you read

34 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- a Joe Jeannette thinks that the champion's ribs are weak
- b The champion is heavier than the challenger.. . . .
- c Jim's children are at their aunt's house during the fight.. . . .
- d Mae stays to watch the whole fight.. . . .
- e Max Baer is worried in the first round.. . . .
- f Baer breaks Jim's ribs in the second round.. . . .
- g The champion stays calm in the fight.

After you read

35 Discuss these questions.

- a What helps Mae to change her mind about the fight?
- b How is Jim Braddock's attitude to boxing different in 1935 than it was in 1928? Explain your answer.

Chapter 14

Before you read

- 36 How do you think these people will feel if Braddock wins? How will they feel if he loses?
Mae Ancil Hoffman Sporty Lewis
- 37 Who do you think will win the fight? Why do you think that?

While you read

- 38 Number these events in the correct order, from 1 to 6.
- a Mae listens to the fight with her children.
 - b Joe Gould jumps into the ring.
 - c The judges' decision is announced.
 - d Mae walks away from the radio.
 - e Max Baer comes over to Jim's corner.
 - f Jim takes Baer's big punch and smiles at the champion

After you read

- 39 What was Max Baer trying to do in the fight? How were Jim's attitude and fighting style different from the champion's?
- 40 In your opinion, why did poor people across the country support Jim Braddock?

Writing

- 41 You are Sporty Lewis. Write about the Braddock-Baer fight for your newspaper.
- 42 You are making the movie of *Cinderella Man*. Write a scene when Jim first sees Mae and the children after winning the title.
- 43 Imagine that you are Mae many years after the big fight. Tell Jim's story to one of your grandchildren in a letter.
- 44 You write about books for a magazine. Write about *Cinderella Man*, telling your readers why they should—or shouldn't—read the book.
- 45 You are a sports reporter for the radio and you are going to interview the heavyweight champion of the world, Jim Braddock, before his fight with Joe Louis. Write a list of the ten questions you would most like to ask.

- 46 Write a character description of one of these people:
Jim Braddock Mae Braddock Joe Gould Mike Wilson
Max Baer
Support your description with examples of the person's words or actions.
- 47 All of the people in the book are real except Mike Wilson and his family. You are the writer of the movie. Write an e-mail to the filmmakers explaining why you put this character in the story.
- 48 Think about a time in your life when you had to fight for your beliefs. Describe it in a diary page.
- 49 What does this book tell you about life in the United States in the early 1930s? Write a description of what life was like for many poor Americans at that time. Include examples from *Cinderella Man*.
- 50 Professional boxers have to be very fit. Write a weekly exercise program for a boxer or for yourself.

WORD LIST

amateur (n) someone who does something because they enjoy it, not because it is their job

announce (v) to tell people about something officially

boo (n/v) a shout showing dislike of a person or their performance

butcher (n) someone who owns or works in a shop that sells meat

cast (n) a hard cover used to protect a broken bone

challenge (v) to try to beat the best person in a sports event

champion (n) someone who is the best in a sports event

combination (n) in boxing, two or more punches that are put together

cross (n) in boxing, a punch that goes from right to left or left to right

dock (n) the place in a port where things are taken on and off ships

dodge (v) to move quickly so that something doesn't hit you

fist (n) a closed hand

foreman (n) a worker in charge of other workers

funeral (n) a religious service for someone who has just died

heavyweight (n/adj) a boxer from the heaviest weight group; a **light** heavyweight is a boxer from a lower weight group

hook (n) a curved piece of metal used for picking things up

jab (n/v) a quick punch in which a boxer's hand goes straight forward

knockout (n/adj; **knock out**, v) a hit by a boxer which is so hard that the other boxer falls down and can't get up again

nod (n/v) a movement of your head to say yes or to show agreement

opponent (n) somebody who is against you in a sports event

polish (n) something used to make things shine, for example shoes

priest (n) someone who performs religious services in some religions

punch (n/v) a hit with your closed hand

referee (n) someone who makes sure that rules are followed in sports

relief (n) money, food, or clothes given to those who need them; the feeling that you can stop worrying about something

rib (n) one of the curved bones in your chest

ring (n) a square area, surrounded by seats, where boxers fight

round (n) one stage of a boxing fight, usually lasting three minutes

sweat (n/v) liquid that comes from the skin of a hot or nervous person

wagon (n) a strong vehicle with four wheels, usually pulled by horses

Penguin Readers Factsheets

Teacher's Notes

Cinderella Man

By Marc Cerasini



Level 4 – Intermediate Cinderella Man

Summary

Cinderella Man tells the true story of American boxing legend, James J. Braddock. A man of the people, Braddock fights against poverty and obscurity as hard as he does against his sporting opponents. This book is based on the 2005 movie, directed by Ron Howard and starring Russell Crowe and Renée Zellweger.

The story begins in 1928, when the American economy is thriving and Braddock is a popular and successful boxer. He has a promising boxing career ahead of him, plenty of money and a happy home life in New Jersey with his wife and three children. But by the early 1930s Jim Braddock's career has hit rock bottom. America is suffering from the Great Depression and, like many of his fellow Americans, Braddock finds himself unable to pay the bills or support his young family. After a crushing defeat in the boxing ring, Braddock loses his boxing license and is forced to work for a few dollars a day in the Newark, New Jersey, docks. Despite being so desperately poor that he has to beg his former manager for money, Braddock never loses his pride or his determination to keep his family together.

Just when the family are most desperate, Braddock is offered a second chance in the ring. He returns to fighting having sold his boxing shoes and with no recent training. But his work at the docks has strengthened Braddock's left hand punch ... and his resolve. He wins his fight and goes on to win more. He becomes the champion of the American common man – fighting against the odds and carrying the hopes and dreams of his countrymen with every punch. He works his way up the boxing ranks until, finally, he faces Max Baer – the notoriously violent world heavyweight champion. With his wife begging him not to fight on one side, and the demoralized, impoverished American population urging him to win on the other, Braddock enters the ring for the fight of his life. After a long and dramatic fight, the judges announce Braddock's victory. The fighter's triumph over great adversity both in and out of the ring is a truly inspirational tale.

About the authors

Cliff Hollingsworth and Akiva Goldsman worked together to write the story for the movie *Cinderella Man*. Before the movie, Jim Braddock's story was not well known in the United States. Hollingsworth wanted to tell modern Americans about this great man, so he contacted Jim Braddock's sons, Jay and Howard. They read Hollingsworth's first script and loved it! At last their father's heroic story would be told.

Hollingsworth wanted to keep as close to the true story as possible. When Jim Braddock pays money back to the relief office in Chapter 10, it may seem like a Hollywood fantasy, but it was really true. Jim Braddock's sons, too, agreed that their parents' characters and the movie story itself is very accurate. As Hollingsworth says, Jim Braddock "was a character who was too good to be true – but he was true!" *Cinderella Man* was Cliff Hollingsworth's first big movie.

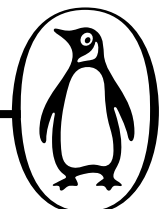
Akiva Goldsman is an experienced Hollywood scriptwriter. He worked with Hollingsworth on the *Cinderella Man* script once the main story was ready. Before *Cinderella Man*, he adapted two John Grisham movies, *The Client* and *A Time to Kill*, as well as working with the actor Russell Crowe on the Oscar-winning movie, *A Beautiful Mind*. (You can read all these stories in the Penguin Readers series, too.)

Marc Cerasini wrote the book *Cinderella Man* from the movie. He has worked as a magazine editor and writer for over twenty years. He often works on novelizations for some of the big movie companies in Hollywood.

Background and themes

Cinderella Man begins in New York in 1928, during the "Roaring Twenties." This was an exciting time of great economic prosperity and social change in the United States. After World War I, the American economy grew faster than ever before. Thousands of people were making money quickly on the stock market, the development of mass-produced goods meant that industry was thriving, and new music, movies, and literature were inspiring people's creativity and optimism everywhere. But this all came to a sudden end on Black Tuesday, 29th October 1929, when the US stock market collapsed.

The book highlights the sudden and dramatic change in the Braddocks' fortunes as the United States (and the industrialized world) was plunged into the Great Depression. Although President Herbert Hoover insisted that the only thing to fear was "fear itself," the American economy did not recover and millions of Americans lost their jobs and their homes. *Cinderella Man* shows the suffering of the average American citizen during the Depression. We see Mae forced to wait in line for soup to feed her family and to burn street signs to keep her children warm and Jim reduced to begging for a few dollars (Chapter 5) to keep his family together. We also see homeless New Yorkers living on the streets, in cars, on the subway and in Central Park. All over the United States, people began building shanty towns – also known as "Hoovervilles" – to live in.



Penguin Readers Factsheets

Teacher's Notes

With the election of Franklin D. Roosevelt as the new American president, the government began injecting money into the economy and handing out money to the country's poor. Jim and his fellow Americans are ashamed to receive money from the government – but they know it is their only chance of survival. When Jim eventually wins some prize money, he immediately goes to the relief office to pay back what he has received. Books and movies set during the Great Depression are popular in America today because the people are proud of their families' abilities to survive and remain proud during this difficult time.

Against the background of the Great Depression, *Cinderella Man* tells a story of a loving and courageous family man. He is determined to keep his family together and to bring his children up honorably, even in the most difficult circumstances. When Jay steals some meat to feed the family, Jim makes him take it back to the butcher. Even in the good times, at the beginning and end of the story, Jim Braddock is more interested in spending time with his wife and children than in a superstar lifestyle. They are "the reason why he was not only the heavyweight champion of the world, but the luckiest man in it."

Communicative activities

The following teacher-led activities cover the same sections of text as the exercises at the back of the Reader, and supplement those exercises. For supplementary exercises covering shorter sections of the book, see the photocopiable Student's Activities pages of this Factsheet. These are primarily for use with class Readers but, with the exception of discussion and pair/group work questions, can also be used by students working alone in a self-access center.

ACTIVITIES BEFORE READING THE BOOK

- 1 Ask students what they know about the story of *Cinderella Man* before they start reading the book. Have any of the students seen the movie? If so, ask them to tell the rest of the class about it. Ask them to look at the front cover, too. Elicit ideas about the story from the students. Do they recognise the actors (Russell Crowe and Renée Zellweger)? Ask them to look closely at the crowd. Can they guess when and where the story takes place?
- 2 Ask students to write down their favorite sport on a piece of paper. They should spend a few minutes thinking about *why* they like that sport, and make notes if they need to. Walk around the class and help students with vocabulary. (If any students don't like any sport, ask them to write down the reasons why.) Then, choose some students to tell the rest of the class about their favorite sport. How many other students also chose that sport as their favorite? Do they like it for similar reasons? What are the most popular sports in the class?

ACTIVITIES AFTER READING A SECTION

Chapter 1

Ask students to write a character profile of Jim Braddock for a popular magazine. Students should include information about his sport, home life and other interests. Ask students to use their imaginations and add some details, such as favorite food, hobby etc.

Chapters 2–3

Students work in small groups. Give each group a large piece of paper and ask them to make a list of the problems that the Braddocks face at the end of Chapter 3. After a few minutes, the groups should swap their pieces of paper and try to think of a solution for each of the problems. As a class discussion, ask students how easy it will be for the Braddocks to find solutions to their problems. What other problems might they face in the next part of the book?

Chapters 4–5

When the Braddock's electricity and heat are turned off, Mae takes the boys to her father and Rosy to her sister. Ask students to write a page in Jay's diary about this day. How does he feel about being sent away? What did he see on the trip to his grandfather's house? How does he feel about his sick brother and sister? Does he like it at his grandfather's house? Jim promised not to send the children away. Does Jay feel differently about his father now that this promise has been broken?

Chapters 6–7

Students work in pairs. Ask them to prepare and then act out the following conversation:

Student A: You are Jim Braddock. Joe Gould has just told you that you will fight Corn Griffin for \$250. You know it is dangerous but you want to fight because your family needs the money. Talk to Mae about it. Tell her it's only one fight. Explain that you only get a few dollars for a day's work at the docks. You need her support. Will she give it?

Student B: You are Mae Braddock. Your husband, Jim, will tell you that he has a fight against Corn Griffin. You're not happy about it because you're scared for your husband's safety. What will happen to your family if he is injured and can't work. Or if he dies? Ask him how much money he will get. Will you support your husband, or not?

Chapters 8–9

Students work individually or in pairs. In Chapter 9, John Henry Lewis says that Jim is "not the same guy." Ask students to make two lists: one about the changes in Jim's fighting style and the other about any other changes in Jim's character and attitude since 1928. Ask some students to read their lists to the rest of the class and encourage classroom discussion. What has made Jim change so much in just a few years?

Chapters 10–11

Students work in small groups. Ask each group to choose one of these scenes and prepare it to be acted out in front of the class. Encourage students to expand the scene from the book to include more dialogue and action.

- Jim goes home and finds Sara Wilson there with Mae. She tells him that Mike is missing.
- Jim finds Mike, dying, under a wagon in Central Park.
- Mike's funeral.
- Jim, Mae and Joe answer reporters' questions about the fight with Max Baer.
- Jim, Mae and Joe go to the boxing club for dinner and Max Baer comes in.



Penguin Readers Factsheets

Teacher's Notes

Chapters 12–13

Students work in pairs. In each pair, one student is a radio or television interviewer and the other is Jim Braddock. Students should prepare and act out a short interview (about 6–8 questions) before the big fight. The interviewer should ask Jim about his preparation for the fight and his feelings about it, too. Some students can act out their interviews for the rest of the class.

Chapter 14

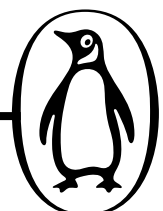
Students work individually or in pairs. After years of poverty, Jim Braddock wins a lot of money in his fight against Max Baer. What will he spend it on? Ask students to write a shopping list for the Braddock family three things for Jim, three for Mae, three for the whole family, and one each for the children (total 12 things). Then, as a whole class activity, compare the lists and choose the best or most popular ideas to make a master shopping list on the board. Ask students what *they* would buy if they suddenly received a lot of money.

ACTIVITIES AFTER READING THE BOOK

- 1 Discussion: "*Cinderella Man* is a sports movie for boxing fans." Do students agree or disagree? What might someone who is uninterested in boxing enjoy about the movie?
- 2 Use a video or DVD of a sport that your students may be familiar with. Show the students the video/DVD with the sound turned off. Tell them that they will need to supply the sports commentary for the rest of the class. You will need to show the video several times and allow plenty of time for the students to make notes and practice. Alternatively, you could ask students to supply their own video/DVD and to prepare their commentary for homework.

Word list

It will be useful for your students to know the new words found on page 80 of the Reader. They are practiced in the "Before you read" sections at the back of the book. (The definitions are based on those in the Longman Active Study Dictionary.)



Penguin Readers Factsheets

Student's Activities

Cinderella Man

By Marc Cerasini



Level 4 – Intermediate Cinderella Man Photocopiable

These activities can be done alone or with one or more other students. Pair/group only activities are marked*.

ACTIVITIES BEFORE READING THE BOOK

- Cinderella Man* was a successful movie in 2005. Read about it in the Introduction (pages v–vii). Then close the book and read these sentences. Are they true (T) or false (F)?
 - Cinderella Man* is a true story about a famous American boxer.
 - Film maker Ron Howard and actor Russell Crowe worked together for the first time in *Cinderella Man*.
 - Jim Braddock's wife, Mae, is played by Renée Zellweger in the movie.
 - Russell Crowe had to put on weight to play Jim Braddock in the movie.
 - Muhammad Ali, the famous boxing trainer, trained Russell Crowe for the movie.
 - Some of Braddock's opponents are played by real boxers in the movie.
- Look at the Contents (page iii) and read the chapter titles. Do you think the story has a happy ending? What happens, do you think?

ACTIVITIES WHILE READING THE BOOK

Chapter 1

- Who
 - had come to New York after winning fifty fights?
 - organized the fights at Madison Square Garden?
 - has no control over his mouth?
 - had moved from Ireland to the United States for a better life?
 - finds it difficult to watch Jim's fights?
- Joe Gould is Jim Braddock's manager. What work does he do and how does he earn money? Why does Mae ask him questions about Jim's prize money? From this chapter, do you think Joe Gould is a good manager? Give reasons for your answers.

Chapter 2 and 3

- Finish these sentences in your own words. Try not to look at the Reader.
 - Jim's wedding photograph reminds him of ____
 - Jim gives his meat to his daughter, Rosy, even though ____
 - When the United States economy failed, ____
 - It's harder and harder for Joe Gould to ____

- Ben points his gun at the foreman's heart because ____
 - Jay stole enough meat to ____
- Why does Jay steal the meat? What does Jim do about it? If you were Jim, what would you do?
 - Answer these questions.
 - What does Joe Gould say about Jim's opponent before the fight?
 - How has Joe Gould been affected by the Crash?
 - Joe Gould breaks the rules of boxing for Jim's fight in two ways. What are they?
 - Jim has broken his hand badly. What other damage has he suffered in the ring?
 - What reason does the referee give for ending the fight early?
 - Read chapter 3 carefully; then close the book. How much can you remember about Jim's fight with Abe Feldman? Why did Jimmy Johnston take away Jim's boxing license? Was he right, do you think? Give reasons for your answer.

Chapters 4 and 5

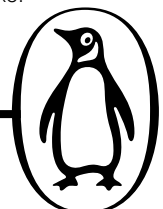
- Complete these sentences. Use these words.

ashamed beaten destroyed failed
useless worried worse

- Mae is ____ about Jim's hand because he cannot work.
 - Jim's hand is broken, but he will not be ____.
 - The doctor says that Jim's right hand will be ____ for months.
 - Without heat and electric power, Howard's cough became ____.
 - Jim feels ____ when he collects money from the Newark relief office.
 - Jim's fight with Tommy Loughran turned him into a boxer of " ____ promise."
 - When Mae takes the children away, Jim realises how easily their life can be ____.
- Joe Jeanette "had always been a hero to Jim." Do you have a hero? Who is it and why do you admire him or her? Are heroes still important in today's world? Why/why not?

Chapters 6 and 7

- Who says these things? What are they talking about?
 - "It was better when we had our own cake."
 - "You're always trying to fix the world."



Penguin Readers Factsheets

Student's Activities

- (c) "Maybe he just needed a little time."
- (d) "You have a better jab than I did!"
- (e) "You're meat, Jimmy."
- (f) "It's not for me... It's for my dad."
- (g) "Am I seeing a ghost?"
- (h) "I can't believe it!"

- 2 After Jim has won his fight against Corn Griffin, he watches Max Baer fight Primo Carnera. You will meet one of these boxers again in this story. Which one, do you think? Can you imagine what will happen?

Chapters 8 and 9

- 1 After Joe Gould visits Jim's apartment in Chapter 8, Jim says "At least in the ring you know who's hitting you." What does he mean? How are his words connected to his work partner, Mike?
- 2 When do these things happen? Put these sentences in order (1–8) starting with the thing that happened first (1).
- (a) Jimmy Johnston agrees to give Jim Braddock a fight with John Henry Lewis.
 - (b) Mike tells Jim he's put some money on him for the fight.
 - (c) Joe Gould visits Jim's apartment.
 - (d) Jim starts training with Joe Jeanette .
 - (e) Jim wins his fight against Art Lasky.
 - (f) Jim wins his fight against Lewis.
 - (g) Mae visits Joe's apartment.
 - (h) Jimmy Johnston announces that he will organize fights among the top heavyweight boxers.

Chapters 10 and 11

- 1 Choose the right answer.
- (a) Jim used some of his prize money to pay back
 - (1) Joe Gould. (2) the butcher. (3) the relief office.
 - (b) After the Crash, tens of thousands of New Yorkers lost their money and became
 - (1) homeless. (2) political. (3) useless.
 - (c) Jim found Mike in a pool of blood under a
 - (1) wagon. (2) trash can. (3) subway.
 - (d) Jim felt that Mike's death was a stupid, unnecessary
 - (1) funeral. (2) waste. (3) future.
- 2 What kind of future will Sara Wilson have with her baby daughter, do you think? Write a paragraph about Sara's life after her husband's death. How will she get money? Who will help her? Where will she live?

- 3 Choose one or more of these words for each person.

angry champion confident journalist
manager mean rich scared smart
successful thoughtful violent

- (a) Jim Braddock
- (b) Mae Braddock
- (c) Joe Gould
- (d) Jimmy Johnston
- (e) Sporty Lewis
- (f) Max Baer

- 4 Jimmy Johnston knew that the Braddocks would meet Max Baer at the club's restaurant. Why did he organize this, do you think?

Chapters 12 and 13

- 1 Jim's wife, Mae, asks Jim not to fight. She is scared for her husband's life and for her family's future. Is she right to ask him not to fight, do you think? Is Jim right to fight without his wife's support? What would you do? Give reasons for your answers.
- 2 Read this paragraph about the first seven rounds of the big fight. There are ten wrong words. Circle them and write the correct words.

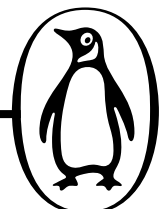
Jim won the first round on punches, but Baer was not worried. He was confident he can end the game at any time with one punch. In the second round, Baer threw more punches at Jim's weak ribs. In the third round, too, Baer punched Jim's body and the manager warned the champion to keep his fists down. Baer kept punching Jim's ribs in the fourth and fifth rounds, but Jim's feet were quieter and he danced away easily. Baer got angry and hit Jim with an illegal handback punch. Then he threw Jim into the crowd. In the sixth round, Jim kept punched Baer hard. Baer wanted to finish the fight, but by the end of the seventh round either fighter was ahead.

Chapter 14

- 1 Read these sentences about Chapter 14. Are they true (T) or false (F)?
- (a) Jim hits Baer below the belt in the twelfth round
 - (b) Baer isn't hitting as hard as he usually does.
 - (c) Mae doesn't listen to any of the fight on the radio.
 - (d) Baer wanted to end the fight with a knockout, but he couldn't do it.
 - (e) After becoming heavyweight champion of the world, Jim Braddock never fought again.
- 2 At the end of the big fight, both boxers were still throwing punches. Why did the judges decide that Jim Braddock was the winner? Read about the fight again and make a list of possible reasons.

ACTIVITIES AFTER READING THE BOOK

- 1 On the back of the book you will find a "blurb" — a short description of the story. A good blurb should make readers want to read the book and find out more. Write your own blurb for *Cinderella Man*. Don't look at the back cover!
- 2 What have you learned about the sport of boxing from this book? Has it changed the way you feel about the sport in any way?
- 3 Jim Braddock has two great loves in his life: boxing and his family. Which is most important to him, do you think? Give reasons for your answers.





Cinderella Man

Mark Cerasini



About the author

Mark Cerasini wrote the book *Cinderella Man* from the movie. He often works on novelizations for some of the big movie companies in Hollywood.

About the movie

Cliff Hollingsworth and Akiva Goldsman worked together to write the story for the movie *Cinderella Man*. Before the movie, the story of Jim Braddock was not well known in the United States. Hollingsworth wanted to tell modern Americans about this great man, so he contacted Braddock's sons, Jay and Howard. They read Hollingsworth's first script and loved it.

Hollingsworth wanted to keep as close to the true story as possible. When Jim pays money back to the relief office in Chapter 10, it may seem like a Hollywood fantasy, but it really happened. Jay and Howard Braddock agreed that the movie story and their parents' characters were very accurate. According to Hollingsworth, Jim Braddock "was a character who was too good to be true—but he *was* true!" However, there have been criticisms over the movie's unflattering portrayal of the boxer Max Baer.

Akiva Goldsman is an experienced Hollywood scriptwriter.

Summary

Cinderella Man tells the true story of an American boxing legend, James J. Braddock. A man of the people, Braddock fights against poverty and obscurity as hard as he does against his sporting opponents. The book is based on the 2005 movie, directed by Ron Howard and starring Russell Crowe and Renée Zellweger.

Chapter 1: The story begins in 1928. The American economy is strong and Jim Braddock has just won his twenty-seventh fight since becoming a professional boxer. The fans love him and his manager, Joe Gould, brags about the win to Jimmy Johnston, an important boxing promoter who supported Jim's opponent.

Chapters 2–3: But by 1933 Jim's luck has gone. America is suffering under the Great Depression. Like millions of other Americans, Jim has no steady job. He and his family move to a poor neighborhood. Jim finds himself unable to pay the bills or buy enough food for his children. He can't get a job.

Jim breaks his right hand in a fight, but wants to box again soon afterwards because he needs money. Although it is against the rules, Joe lets him fight with an injured hand. Jim suffers an embarrassing defeat against a strong opponent. He loses his boxing license and his manager Joe leaves him.

Chapters 4–5: Jim finally gets work for a few dollars a day at the docks. He finds the work difficult because he is forced to use his left hand. Meanwhile, his wife Mae waits in line with the children to get free food.

Jim takes a second job and sees less of his family. During the cold winter, Mae hears that their gas and electricity will be cut off because they haven't paid their bills. Jim and his friend from the docks, Mike, help a poor family who are about to be locked out of their home. Mike tells Jim the people need to organize and fight back. Mae takes the children to live at her relatives' homes in New York City, which makes Jim angry. He swallows his pride and asks his old boxing friends for money to pay the bills so that the children can come home.

Chapters 6–7: Jim's right hand finally heals. Joe visits him and offers him one more fight in the boxing ring. The fight is against a promising young boxer, and Mae is very worried. But the prize is two hundred and fifty dollars.

Despite having sold his boxing shoes and with no recent training, Jim takes the fight. No one expects a has-been boxer like Jim to fight well. But his work at the docks has strengthened Jim's left hand and improved his confidence. To everyone's surprise, he wins the fight.

Chapters 8–9: Mae is happy that Jim won, and relieved when he tells her it was just one fight. But although it is against his wife's wishes, he decides to return to the boxing ring. Jim begins training again and Joe gets him another fight. He wins and goes on to win more fights.



Cinderella Man

Chapters 10–11: Jim becomes a popular boxer with working men, carrying their hopes and dreams with every punch. His friend Mike, angry and desperate, dies accidentally while fighting police during a protest. At Mike's funeral, Mae wonders if she will lose Jim. Finally, Jim reaches the top. His opponent will be Max Baer, a famously violent heavyweight champion who has killed two men in the ring. His wife begs him not to fight but the newspapers call Jim the "Cinderella Man". People say that his successful return to fighting has inspired poor Americans.

Chapters 12–13: Mae begs Jim to get out of the fight, but Jim continues his training. Mae goes to church to pray for Jim, but even there she meets people who are excited about the fight and hoping that Jim will win. She begins to understand how important Jim's fight is to the poor working people. She goes to visit Jim just before the fight and gives him a new pair of boxing shoes to show that now she supports him. That night Jim enters the ring for the most important fight of his life.

Chapter 14: At home, Mae and the children listen to the fight on the radio. At the end of a long and difficult fight, the two men are still standing. The crowd cheers for Jim, and finally the judges make the announcement that everyone wants to hear: Jim Braddock is the new heavyweight champion. The fighter's triumph, both in and out of the ring, has been a truly inspirational tale.

Background and themes

The Great Depression: *Cinderella Man* begins in New York in 1928, during the "Roaring Twenties". This was an exciting time of great economic prosperity and social change in the United States. But it came to a sudden end on Black Tuesday, October 29th, 1929, when the stock market collapsed. The United States (along with the rest of the industrialized world) fell into the Great Depression.

Cinderella Man gives us a picture of the suffering of ordinary Americans during the early years of the Depression. We see unemployed men who are desperate for work. We see people standing in lines for free food. We see homeless New Yorkers living on the streets, in cars, on the subway and in Central Park.

With the election of Franklin Roosevelt as the new president, the government began to give money to the country's poor and build a new economy. Many Americans, like Jim, hoped that Roosevelt's plans would work. Others, like Mike, were more radical, and believed

that the only choice for poor people was to fight the rich.

Family: *Cinderella Man* tells the story of a loving and courageous family man. When the Depression comes, Jim is determined to keep his family together even in the most difficult circumstances. We see how Mae is torn between supporting her husband's career as a boxer, and her fears for his safety and for her children, if anything happened to him. We see how the children, in their different ways, try to support their father and their family—Jay steals food, Rosy buys a steak to put on her father's black eye. At the end of the story, Jim thinks his wife and children are "the reason why he was not only the heavyweight champion of the world, but the luckiest man in it."

Honesty and honor: Another theme that runs through the story is the importance of living an honest and honorable life. Jim's ten-year-old son Jay steals meat for the family, but Jim makes him return it to the butcher's shop and apologize. "We don't steal," he tells his son. "It doesn't matter what happens." Although he becomes so desperately poor that he has to beg money from his old manager and boxing associates, he never loses his pride.

Discussion activities

Before reading

- 1 Discuss:** Tell students they are going to read a story about a sport. Ask students to write down their favorite sport. They should spend a few minutes thinking about how they can describe the sport, and about why they like that sport. Encourage them to make notes. Walk around the class and help students with vocabulary (if students don't like any sport, ask them to think of reason why they don't). Then choose some students to tell the rest of the class about their favorite sport. Find out from the class how many other students chose that sport as their favorite. Ask them if they like it for the same reasons. Find out what is the most popular sport in the class.

Introduction

After reading

- 2 Predict:** Look at the Contents (page iii) and read the chapter titles. *Do you think the story has a happy ending? Why or why not? What happens in the story, do you think?*

Chapter 1

After reading

- 3 Write:** Ask students to write a profile of Jim Braddock for a popular magazine. Students can include information about his sport, home life and other interests. Encourage students to use their imaginations and add some details, such as favorite food, hobby, etc.



Cinderella Man

Chapters 2–3

After reading

- 4 **Discuss:** Ask students to work in small groups. Give each group a large piece of paper and ask them to make a list of the problems that the Braddock family faces at the end of Chapter 3. Then ask groups to think of a solution for each problem on their new list. When they have finished, put two groups together and have them compare their lists of problems and solutions. Ask them to think about how easy or difficult each solution would be, and what other problems the Braddocks might face in the next part of the book.

Chapters 4–5

After reading

- 5 **Write:** When the Braddocks' gas and electricity are turned off, Mae takes the boys to her father's and Rosy to her sister's. Ask students to write a page in Jay's diary about this day. *How does he feel about being sent away? What did he see on the trip to his grandfather's house? How does he feel about his sick brother and sister? Does he like it at his grandfather's house? Jim promised not to send the children away. Does Jay feel differently about his father now that this promise has been broken?*

Chapters 6–7

After reading

- 6 **Role play:** Students work in pairs. Ask them to prepare and then act out the following conversation:
Student A: You are Jim Braddock. Joe Gould has just told you that you will fight Corn Griffin for \$250. You know it is dangerous but you want to fight because your family needs the money. Talk to Mae about it. Tell her it's only one fight. Explain that you get only a few dollars for a day's work at the docks. You need her support to win the fight. Will she support you?
Student B: You are Mae Braddock. Your husband, Jim, will tell you that he has a fight against Corn Griffin. Ask him how much money he will get. You're not happy about it because you are scared that Jim will get hurt. What will happen to your family if Jim is injured and he can't work? What if he dies? Is this really just one fight or will he want to fight more? Will you support him or not?

Chapters 8–9

After reading

- 7 **Write and discuss:** Students work individually or in pairs. In Chapter 9, John Henry Lewis says that Jim is "not the same guy". Ask students to make two lists: one about the changes in Jim's fighting style and the

other about any other changes in Jim's character and attitude since 1928. Ask some students to read their lists to the rest of the class and encourage classroom discussion. *What has made Jim change so much in just a few years?*

Chapters 10–11

After reading

- 8 **Role play:** Students work in small groups. Ask each group to choose one of these scenes and prepare to act it out in front of the class. Encourage students to expand the scene from the book by including more dialogue and action.
- Jim goes home and finds Sara Wilson there with Mae. She tells him Mike is missing.
 - Jim finds Mike, dying, under a wagon in Central Park.
 - Mike's funeral.
 - Jim, Mae and Joe answer the reporter's questions about the fight with Max Baer.
 - Jim, Mae and Joe go to the boxing club for dinner and Max Baer comes in.

Chapters 12–14

After reading

- 9 **Write and discuss:** Students work individually or in pairs. After years of poverty, Jim Braddock wins a lot of money after his fight with Max Baer. What will he spend it on? Ask students to write a shopping list for the Braddock family: three things for Jim, three things for Mae, three things for the whole family and one thing for each of the children (total: 12 things). Then, as a class activity, compare the lists and choose the best or most popular ideas to make a master shopping list on the board. Ask students what they would buy if they suddenly received a lot of money.
- 10 **Research:** *Choose one of these topics. Decide what you would like to learn about it. Use the library or the Internet to find out. Then give a short presentation on it:*
- life in America (or another country) during the Great Depression
 - James Braddock's fight with Joe Louis
 - James Braddock's life after he stopped fighting
 - the life of Max Baer
 - the movie *Cinderella Man*
 - other movies or stories about boxing (e.g. *Ali*, *Million Dollar Baby*, *Rocky*, etc.)
 - Madison Square Garden
- Encourage students to use illustrations or diagrams in their presentations.

Vocabulary activities

For the Word List and vocabulary activities, go to www.penguinreaders.com.



Cinderella Man

Photocopiable

Chapter 1

While reading

1 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- a Tuffy Griffiths is a fighter from New York City. ☐
- b Jim Braddock won a lot of fights before his fight with Tuffy Griffiths. ☐
- c Jimmy Johnston did not want Jim Braddock to win the fight. ☐
- d Joe Gould is always very careful about the things he says. ☐
- e Jim waited to marry Mae because he didn't have enough money. ☐
- f Mae loves to watch Jim fight. ☐

Chapters 2–3

While reading

2 Complete these sentences in your own words.

- a Jim's wedding photograph makes him think about
- b Jim tells his wife that if he wins the fight with Abe Feldman, he
- c Although he has not eaten, Jim gives
- d After the stock market crash, the Braddock family lost
- e It is more and more difficult for Joe Gould to
- f Ben points a gun at the foreman's heart because

3 Why does Jay steal the meat? What does Jim do about it? If you were Jim, what would you do?

Chapters 4–5

While reading

4 Discuss these questions.

- a Why was Joe Jeanette a hero to Jim?
- b Why didn't Jeanette ever fight for the title?
- c How does Jeanette feel about Jim?
- d Why does Joe Gould shake his head at Jeanette?

5 Underline the correct word(s).

- a Jim got another *fight* / *job* to make more money.
- b The policemen decide not to lock the family out of their home because they respect *Jim* / *Mike*.

- c After the electricity and heat is turned off, Howard begins to *cough* / *cry*.
- d Mae sends Rosy to live with her *father* / *sister*.
- e Jim's dreams seemed to end after his fight with *Tommy Loughran* / *Tuffy Griffiths*.
- f After Jim goes to the Madison Square Garden boxing club, he feels *ashamed* / *hopeful*.

Chapters 6–7

While reading

6 Look at these sentences from Chapters 6 and 7. Say who is talking and who the person is talking to. Say why the person says the sentence.

- a "It was better when we had our own cake."
- b "You're always trying to fix the world."
- c "Maybe he just needed a little time."
- d "You have a better jab than I did!"
- e "You're meat, Jimmy."
- f "It's not for me. It's for my dad."
- g "Am I seeing a ghost?"
- h "I can't believe it!"

7 Answer these questions.

- a After Jim fights Corn Griffin, he watches another fight. Who are the fighters?
- b What happens in that fight?
- c What is "so terrible" that Jim cannot watch it?

Chapters 8–9

While reading

8 Number these events in the right order, from 1 to 10.

- a Jimmy Johnston agrees to give Jim a fight with John Henry Lewis. ☐
- b Mike tells Jim he's put some money on him for the fight. ☐
- c Mae pretends to be a radio announcer. ☐
- d Jim wins his fight against Art Lasky ☐
- e Jim starts training with Joe Jeanette. ☐
- f Joe Gould visits Jim's apartment. ☐
- g Jim wins his fight against John Henry Lewis. ☐
- h Mae visits Joe's apartment. ☐
- i Jimmy Johnston announces he will organize fights among the top heavyweight boxers. ☐
- j Jim tells Mae he has a chance for more fights. ☐



Cinderella Man

Photocopiable

9 Complete these sentences in your own words.

- a When Jim says “It was just the one fight,”
Mae feels
- b Mae stops being angry when she enters Joe
Gould’s apartment because
- c Because Jim has been working at the docks,
he has gotten a strong
- d When Jim steps out of his apartment house,
he finds that his neighbors
- e Compared to Lewis, Lasky was slower but he
was

Chapters 10–11

While reading

10 Choose the correct answer.

- a Jim used some of his prize money to pay
back ...
 - 1 Joe Gould.
 - 2 the butcher.
 - 3 the relief office.
- b After the Crash of 1929, many people in New
York became ...
 - 1 homeless.
 - 2 ill.
 - 3 employed.
- c Jim found Mike in a pool of blood under a ...
 - 1 trash can.
 - 2 wagon.
 - 3 subway train.

**11 Choose one or more of the words from the
box for each person.**

angry brave careful cruel honest rich scared thankful violent

- a Jim Braddock:
- b Mae Braddock:
- c Joe Gould:
- d Jimmy Johnston:
- e Sporty Lewis:
- f Max Baer:

Chapters 12–13

While reading

**12 Underline and correct the mistakes in these
sentences about the first part of the big fight.**

- a When Jim walked to the ring, the crowd was
silent.
- b Jim won the first round on punches, but Baer
was not worried.

- c In the second round, Baer threw a lot of
punches at Jim’s arms because he knew they
were weak.
- d In the third round, Baer gave a big right-hand
punch to Jim’s head.
- e The crowd booed at Jim during the fourth
round.
- f In the fifth round, Jim’s manager warned Baer
that he had thrown an illegal punch.
- g Jim threw a strong punch to Baer’s chest that
made him step back.
- h In round seven, everyone is surprised that
neither Jim nor Baer are still fighting.

Chapter 14

While reading

13 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- a Jim hits Baer below the belt in the twelfth
round. ☐
- b Baer isn’t hitting as hard as he usually
does. ☐
- c Mae doesn’t listen to the fight on the
radio. ☐
- d Baer wanted to end the fight with a
knockout, but he couldn’t do it. ☐
- e After becoming heavyweight champion
of the world, Jim never fought again. ☐

After reading

**14 Discuss these questions with another student
and write your answer.**

- a At the end of the fight with Max Baer, the
judges decided that Jim Braddock was the
winner. Why? Make a list of possible reasons.
- b On the back of the book you will find a
“blurb”—a short description of the story. A
good blurb should make people want to read
the book to find out more. Write your own
blurb for *Cinderella Man*. Don’t look at the
back cover!
- c What have you learned about the sport of
boxing from this book? Has it changed the
way you feel about the sport in any way?
- d Jim Braddock has two great loves in his life:
boxing and his family. Which is most
important to him, do you think? Give reasons
for your answers.



Cinderella Man

Photocopiable

Chapter 1

1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

fights gym heavyweight house prize

- a Jim Braddock and Tuffy Griffin fight for the light championship.
- b Jim met Joe Gould in a
- c Joe doesn't like to talk to Mae Braddock about money.
- d Jim waited to marry Mae until he could buy a
- e Mae hated to watch Jim's

Chapters 2-3

2 Underline the correct words.

- a In 1933, Jim and his family live in a small *house / apartment*.
- b The Braddock family keep the money they save in a *bank / jar*.
- c *May / Rosie* tells Jim that Jay stole something.
- d Joe does *one thing / two things* that are illegal before Jim's fight against Feldman.

Chapters 4-5

3 Write right (✓) or wrong (X) or it does not say (?)

- a Mae helps Jim to hide his cast. ☐
- b Mae takes a free bowl of soup and some bread home after waiting in line. ☐
- c Jim asked a young black boxer to buy his shoes for one dollar. ☐
- d The electricity man is sorry to cut off the Braddocks' electricity. ☐
- e Mike supports President Roosevelt. ☐
- f Jimmy Johnston is the only person at the boxing club who doesn't give Jim money. ☐

Chapters 6-7

4 Complete these sentences in your own words.

- a Sara is angry at her husband because
- b Joe says Jim can fight without a boxing license because
- c Joe is worried about the fight against Griffin because Jim
- d Primo Carnera loses the fight because Max Baer is

Chapters 8-9

5 Choose the correct ending (1-6) to each of the sentences a-f.

- a When Mae pretends to be a radio announcer, her children are ...
- b Jim's fight makes the men at the docks feel ...
- c When Mae visits Joe and his wife, they are ...
- d When Joe tells Jim he has a fight with John Henry Lewis, Jim feels ...
- e When Mae tells Jim she will always support him, she is ...
 - 1 worried.
 - 2 friendly.
 - 3 hopeful.
 - 4 amused.
 - 5 excited.

Chapters 10-11

6 Match the speakers with the words.

- a "Did you win?" 1 Sara Wilson
- b "She's scared for Max Baer." 2 Jimmy Johnston
- c "He'll see it or there'll be no fight." 3 Max Baer
- d "Something's wrong. I know it is." 4 Jim Braddock
- e "Look, it's the Cinderella Man!" 5 Mike Wilson

Chapters 12-13

7 What happened first? Put the sentences in order and number them, 1-8.

- a Mae tells Jim she supports him. ☐
- b Baer throws Jim onto the ropes. ☐
- c The children listen to the radio and Mae's sister joins them. ☐
- d Baer learns that Jim has weak ribs. ☐
- e Mae says she doesn't want her sons to be boxers. ☐
- f Baer hits Jim below the belt. ☐
- g Mae talks to Father Rorick. ☐
- h Jim and his trainer watch films of Max Baer. ☐

Chapter 14

8 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

- a Jim's face is cut under his nose.
- b Sporty Lewis refuses to cheer for Jim.
- c Baer is standing when the final bell rings.
- d The judges announce their decision immediately.
- e Jim thinks of the prize money after the fight.
- f Jim fights one more time after he becomes heavyweight champion of the world.



Cinderella Man

Book key

1–2 Open answers

- 3 a The economy failed, probably because the country was producing more than it needed.
b He lost all of his money and had to take any work he could find.
c He wanted people to know this true American story.
d He swam, ran, rode a bike, climbed, studied boxing, worked at the punching bag and in the ring. He was trained to box – to box like Braddock.

4 a no b yes c no d yes e no f no g no
h no i yes j no

5–9 Open answers

- 10 a Mae Braddock
b Ben
c Jay Braddock
d Jim Braddock
e Joe Gould
f Jim Braddock
g Jimmy Johnston
h Joe Gould

11–15 Open answers

16 a 4 b 9 c 7 d 2 e 10 f 5 g 8 h 1
i 6 j 3

- 17 a Because he has listened to Jim's fights and wants to help.
b Because Jim is a proud man and Joe knows how difficult the situation must be for him.
c Because two of the children are sick and she and Jim can't keep them warm.
d Because a decision like that should be made by both parents, and because he promised Jay never to send him away.

18–19 Open answers

- 20 a NO b NO c NO d NO e YES
- 21 a It is a party for all the children whose parents can't afford birthday parties.
b Because he has arranged a fight for Jim.
c Because they want the butcher to give them steak for their father.
d Because without a spoon Jim will eat with his hand, and Joe doesn't have time to tape his hands again.
e Because Jim wins the fight against Griffin.
f Because Baer hits Carnera again and again with terrible strength, and in the past Baer has killed a boxer in the ring.

22–23 Open answers

- 24 a Rosy Braddock
b Mike Wilson
c Mae Braddock
d Joe Gould
e Joe Jeannette
f Jim Braddock
g John Henry Lewis
h Max Baer
- 25 a Because they thought he was rich after winning the fight.
b Because she didn't realize that Joe was poor, too.
c Because he has a powerful left hand after lifting sacks.
d Because he expected Lewis to beat Jim again.

26–28 Open answers

- 29 a the Newark relief office
b flowers
c Mike
d in Central Park
e Few
f Mae
g Joe Gould
h Max Baer
i a drink

30–33 Open answers

34 a X b ✓ c ✓ d X e X f X g X

35–37 Open answers

38 a 3 b 4 c 6 d 1 e 5 f 2

39–50 Open answers

Discussion activities key

1–10 Open answers

Activity worksheets key

- 1 a F b T c T d F e T f F
- 2 a the good things in his life
b earn fifty dollars
c his meat to Rosy
d all their money
e find fights for Jim
f he is desperate to get work
g send him to live somewhere else
- 3 Jay steals the meat because he is afraid his family will send him away, because they do not have enough food for him and the other children. Jim makes him take the meat back to the butcher shop and apologize for stealing it.



Cinderella Man

- 4 a Because he was a great boxer
b Because he was black and few white boxers would fight him.
c He is happy to see him again.
d Joe doesn't want Jeanette to tell Jim that he is at the gym. He is afraid that it will make Jim feel embarrassed.
- 5 a job
b Jim
c cough
d sister
e Tommy Loughran
f ashamed
- 6 a Howard is talking to his father, Jim. He is at a church birthday party for children whose parents can't afford their own party.
b Sarah is talking to her husband, Mike. She is arguing with him outside the church birthday party. She wants him to take their children to the party but he won't because he is too proud. She says he spends too much time on "fixing the world" and not enough time on his own family.
c Jim is talking to Mae about Mike. Jim thinks that it was too hard for Mike to join the party because that would show that he is poor.
d Jim is talking to his daughter, Rosy. He is showing her how to box.
e Joe Gould is talking to Jim. He is talking about the fight with Corn Griffin. Jim is "meat" because he is fighting only because another fighter is sick, and no one thinks he will win.
f Rosy is talking to the butcher. She wants meat for her dad so he can win a boxing fight.
g Sporty Lewis is talking to Jim. Sporty is a sports writer who wrote bad things about Jim's fight with Loughran. He is surprised to see that Jim is going to fight again.
h A radio announcer is talking on the radio. He is announcing that Jim Braddock has won the fight with Corn Griffin.
- 7 a Max Baer and Primo Carnera
b Max Baer wins the fight
c the way that Max Baer keeps punching Carnera
- 8 a 6 b 7 c 1 d 10 e 5 f 2 g 8 h 4
i 9 j 3
- 9 a relieved./thankful.
b they have no furniture/the apartment is not beautiful.
c left hand.
d support him.
e bigger and faster.
- 10 a 3 b 1 c 2
- 11 a thankful, angry, brave
b scared, angry, brave
c angry
d careful
e cruel
f violent, rich, cruel
- 12 a When Jim walked to the ring, the crowd **cheered**.
b Jim won the first round on **points**, but Baer was not worried.
c In the second round, Baer threw a lot of punches at Jims' **ribs** because he knew they were weak.
d In the third round, Baer gave a big **left-hand** punch to Jim's head.
e The crowd booed at Baer during the fourth round.
f In the fifth round, **the referee** warned Baer that he had thrown an illegal punch.
g Jim threw a strong punch to Baer's **chin** that made him step back.
h In round seven, everyone is surprised that **both** Jim and Baer are still fighting.
- 13 a F b T c F d T e F
- 14 a–d Open answers

Progress test key

- 1 a heavyweight b gym c prize d house e fights
2 a apartment b jar c Rosie d two things
3 a ✓ b ✗ c ? d ✓ e ✗ f ✗
4 a he is too proud to take their family to the church birthday party.
b it is one time only.
c has not trained in a long time.
d faster.
- 5 a 4 b 3 c 2 d 5 e 1
6 a 5 b 4 c 2 d 1 e 3
7 a 5 b 7 c 6 d 3 e 1 f 8 g 4 h 2
8 a F: Jim is cut under his eye.
b F: Sporty joins the crowd cheering for Jim.
c T
d F: Everyone waits for the judges' decision.
e F: Jim thinks of his family.
f F: Jim fights two more times, against Joe Lewis and Tommy Farr.